

# Analysis I (Tao) Notes

Steven Labalme

August 13, 2020

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	What Is Analysis? . . . . .	1
1.2	Why Do Analysis? . . . . .	1
<b>2</b>	<b>Starting at the Beginning: The Natural Numbers</b>	<b>2</b>
2.1	The Peano Axioms . . . . .	2
2.2	Addition . . . . .	4
2.3	Multiplication . . . . .	9
<b>3</b>	<b>Set Theory</b>	<b>14</b>
3.1	Fundamentals . . . . .	14
3.2	Russell's Paradox . . . . .	24
3.3	Functions . . . . .	26
3.4	Images and Inverse Images . . . . .	33
3.5	Cartesian Products . . . . .	41
3.6	Cardinality of Sets . . . . .	55
<b>A</b>	<b>Appendix: The Basics of Mathematical Logic</b>	<b>65</b>
A.1	Mathematical Statements . . . . .	65
A.2	Implication . . . . .	68
A.3	The Structure of Proofs . . . . .	69
A.4	Variables and Quantifiers . . . . .	69
A.5	Nested Quantifiers . . . . .	71
A.6	Some Examples of Proofs and Quantifiers . . . . .	72
A.7	Equality . . . . .	73
A.8	Misc. Notes . . . . .	74
	<b>References</b>	<b>75</b>

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 What Is Analysis?

- 6/14:
- **Analysis:** “The rigorous study of [mathematical] objects, with a focus on trying to pin down precisely and accurately the qualitative and quantitative behavior of those objects” (Tao, 2016, p. 1).
  - **Real analysis:** “The analysis of the real numbers, sequences and series of real numbers, and real-valued functions” (Tao, 2016, p. 1).
  - Real analysis is the theoretical foundation for **calculus**.
  - **Calculus:** “The collection of computational algorithms which one uses to manipulate functions” (Tao, 2016, p. 1).
  - Lists questions that can be answered with real analysis (motivation for studying it).

### 1.2 Why Do Analysis?

- Lists examples of contradictions in naïve calculus that must be resolved (and can be resolved with real analysis).

## Chapter 2

# Starting at the Beginning: The Natural Numbers

- 6/15:
- This text will begin by reviewing high school level material, but as rigorously as possible.
    - It will teach the skill of proving complicated properties from simpler ones, allowing you to understand why an “obvious” statement really is obvious.
    - One particularly important skill is the use of **mathematical induction**.
    - We will strive to eliminate **circularity**.
  - **Circularity**: “Using an advanced fact to prove a more elementary fact, and then later using the elementary fact to prove the advanced fact” (Tao, 2016, p. 14).
  - The number systems used in real analysis, listed in order of increasing sophistication, are the **naturals**  $\mathbb{N}^{[1]}$ , the **integers**  $\mathbb{Z}$ , the **rationals**  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and the **reals**  $\mathbb{R}$ .
    - **Complex numbers**  $\mathbb{C}$  will only be used much later.
  - This chapter will answer the question, “How does one actually *define* the natural numbers?”

### 2.1 The Peano Axioms

- **Peano Axioms**: First laid out by Guiseppe Peano, these are a standard way to define the natural numbers. They consist of Axioms 2.1-2.5, which follow.
  - From these five axioms and some from set theory, we can build all other number systems, create functions, and do algebra and calculus.
- How do you define operations on the naturals?
  - Complicated operations are defined in terms of simpler ones: Exponentiation is repeated multiplication, multiplication is repeated addition, and addition is repeated **incrementing**.
- **Incrementing**: The most fundamental operation — best thought of as counting forward by one number.
  - Incrementing is one of the fundamental concepts that allows us to define the natural numbers.
  - Let<sup>[2]</sup>  $n++$  denote the increment, or **successor**, of  $n$ .

---

<sup>1</sup>Note that in this text, the natural numbers will include 0. The natural numbers without 0 will be called the **positive integers**  $\mathbb{Z}^+$ .

<sup>2</sup>This notation is pulled from some computer languages such as C.

■ For example,  $3++ = 4$  and  $(3++)++ = 5$ .

- Let  $x := y$  denote the statement, “ $x$  is defined to equal  $y$ .”
- At this point, we can begin defining the natural numbers.

**Axiom 2.1.** *0 is a natural number.*

**Axiom 2.2.** *If  $n$  is a natural number, then  $n++$  is also a natural number.*

- To avoid having to use incrementation notation for every number, we adopt a convention.

**Definition 2.1.** We define 1 to be the number  $0++$ , 2 to be the number  $(0++)++$ , 3 to be the number  $((0++)++)++$ , etc.

- From these axioms, we can already prove things.

**Proposition 2.1.** *3 is a natural number.*

*Proof.* By Axiom 2.1, 0 is a natural number. By Axiom 2.2,  $0++ = 1$  is a natural number. By Axiom 2.2 again,  $1++ = 2$  is a natural number. By Axiom 2.2 again,  $2++ = 3$  is a natural number.  $\square$

- It seems like Axioms 2.1 and 2.2 have us pretty well covered. However, what if the number system wraps around (e.g., if  $3++ = 0$ )? We can fix this with the following.

**Axiom 2.3.** *0 is not the successor of any natural number; i.e., we have  $n++ \neq 0$  for every natural number  $n$ .*

- We can now prove that  $4 \neq 0$  (because  $4 = 3++$ ,  $3 \in \mathbb{N}$ , and  $n++ \neq 0$ ).
- However, there are still issues — what if the number system hits a ceiling at 4, e.g.,  $4++ = 4$ ?
- A good way to prevent this kind of behavior is via the following.

**Axiom 2.4.** *Different natural numbers must have different successors, i.e., if  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $n \neq m$ , then  $n++ \neq m++$ . Equivalently<sup>[3]</sup>, if  $n++ = m++$ , then  $n = m$ .*

- We can now prove propositions like the following, extending our anti-wrap around proving ability.

**Proposition 2.2.** *6 is not equal to 2.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $6 = 2$ . Then  $5++ = 1++$ , so by Axiom 2.4,  $5 = 1$ . Then  $4++ = 0++$ , so by Axiom 2.4,  $4 = 0$ , which contradicts our proof that  $4 \neq 0$ .  $\square$

6/16:

- Before going any further, we’re going to need an **axiom schema**.
- **Axiom schema:** An axiom that functions as “a template for producing an (infinite) number of axioms, rather than a single axiom in its own right” (Tao, 2016, p. 20).

**Axiom 2.5** (Principle of mathematical induction). *Let  $P(n)$  be any property pertaining to a natural number  $n$ . Suppose that  $P(0)$  is true, and suppose that whenever  $P(n)$  is true,  $P(n++)$  is also true. Then  $P(n)$  is true for every natural number  $n$ .*

- Axiom 2.5 allows us to exclude numbers such as  $0.5, 1.5, 2.5, \dots$  from our number system because  $P(n)$  is only true for  $n \in 0, 1, 2, \dots$

---

<sup>3</sup>This is an example of reformulating an implication using its **contrapositive** (see Section A.2). In the converse direction, it is the **axiom of substitution** (see Section A.7).

- Proposition 2.1.11 in Tao, 2016 is an excellent template for an induction proof.
- Note that there is only one natural number system — we could call  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$  and  $\{O, I, II, III, \dots\}$  different number systems, but they are **isomorphic**, since a one-to-one correspondence exists between their elements and they obey the same rules.
- An interesting property of the naturals is that while every element is finite (0 is finite; if  $n$  is finite, then  $n++$  is finite), the set is infinite.
- In math, we define the natural numbers **axiomatically** as opposed to **constructively** — “we have not told you what the natural numbers are... we have only listed some things you can do with them... and some of the properties that they have” (Tao, 2016, p. 22).
  - This is the essence of treating objects **abstractly**, caring only about the properties of objects, not what they are or what they mean.
  - “The great discovery of the late nineteenth century was that numbers can be understood abstractly via axioms, without necessarily needing a concrete model; of course a mathematician can use any of these models [e.g., counting beads] when it is convenient, to aid his or her intuition and understanding, but they can also be just as easily discarded when they begin to get in the way [of understanding  $-3, 1/3, \sqrt{2}, 3 + 4i, \dots$ ]” (Tao, 2016, p. 23).
- With the axioms (and the concept of a function, which does not rely on said axioms), we can introduce recursive definitions, which will be useful in defining addition and multiplication.

**Proposition 2.3** (Recursive definitions). *Suppose for each natural number  $n$ , we have some function  $f_n : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  from the natural numbers to the natural numbers. Let  $c$  be a natural number. Then we can assign a unique natural number  $a_n$  to each natural number  $n$ , such that  $a_0 = c$  and  $a_{n++} = f_n(a_n)$  for each natural number  $n$ .*

*Proof.* (Informal<sup>[4]</sup>) We use induction. First, a single value  $c$  is given to  $a_0$  (no other value  $a_{n++} := f_n(a_n)$  will be assigned to 0 by Axiom 2.3). Given that  $a_n$  has a unique value,  $a_{n++}$  will have a unique value  $f_n(a_n)$ , distinct from any other  $a_{m++}$  by Axiom 2.4.  $\square$

## 2.2 Addition

- We can define addition recursively.

**Definition 2.2** (Addition of natural numbers). Let  $m$  be a natural number. To add zero to  $m$ , we define  $0 + m := m$ . Now suppose inductively that we have defined how to add  $n$  to  $m$ . Then we can add  $n++$  to  $m$  by defining  $(n++) + m := (n + m)++$ .

- If we want to find  $2 + 5$ , we can find  $0 + 5 = 5$ ,  $1 + 5 = (0++) + 5 = (0 + 5)++ = 5++ = 6$ ,  $2 + 5 = (1++) + 5 = (1 + 5)++ = 6++ = 7$ .

- Let’s now prove commutativity.

**Lemma 2.1.** *For any natural number  $n$ ,  $n + 0 = n$ .*

*Proof.* Use induction. Since  $0 + m = m$  for all  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $0 \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $0 + 0 = 0$ , proving the base case. If  $n + 0 = n$ , then  $(n++) + 0 = (n + 0)++ = n++$ . This closes the induction.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.2.** *For any  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $n + (m++) = (n + m)++$ .*

---

<sup>4</sup>“Strictly speaking, this proposition requires one to define the notion of a **function**, which we shall do in the next chapter. However, this will not be circular, as the concept of a function does not require the Peano axioms. Proposition [2.3] can be formalized more rigorously in the language of set theory; see Exercise 3.5.12” (Tao, 2016, p. 23).

*Proof.* We keep  $m$  fixed and induct on  $n$ . Base case: if  $n = 0$ , then  $0 + (m++) = (m)++ = (0 + m)++$ . Induction step: if  $n + (m++) = (n + m)++$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} (n++) + (m++) &= (n + (m++))++ && \text{Definition 2.2} \\ &= ((n + m)++)++ && \text{Induction hypothesis} \\ &= ((n++) + m)++ && \text{Definition 2.2} \end{aligned}$$

This closes the induction.  $\square$

**Proposition 2.4** (Addition is commutative). *For any natural numbers  $n$  and  $m$ ,  $n + m = m + n$ .*

*Proof.* For all  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , Definition 2.2 gives us  $0 + m = m$  and Lemma 2.1 gives us  $m + 0 = m$ . Since both of the previous statements equal  $m$ ,  $0 + m = m + 0$ . Suppose inductively that  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $n + m = m + n$ . If this is true, then

$$\begin{aligned} (n++) + m &= (n + m)++ && \text{Definition 2.2} \\ &= (m + n)++ && \text{Induction hypothesis} \\ &= m + (n++) && \text{Lemma 2.2} \end{aligned}$$

This closes the induction.  $\square$

- And associativity (see Exercise 2.2.1).
- The next proposition deals with cancelling. Although we cannot use subtraction or negative numbers to prove it, it will be instrumental in allowing us to define subtraction and integers later.

**Proposition 2.5** (Cancellation law). *Let  $a, b, c$  be natural numbers such that  $a + b = a + c$ . Then we have  $b = c$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $a$  (keeping  $b, c$  fixed). Consider the base case  $a = 0$ . If  $0 + b = 0 + c$  by assumption and  $0 + b = b$  and  $0 + c = c$  by Definition 2.2, then  $b = c$ . Suppose inductively that  $a + b = a + c$  implies that  $b = c$ . We must prove that  $(a++) + b = (a++) + c$  implies  $b = c$ . This may be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} (a++) + b &= (a++) + c && \text{Given} \\ (a + b)++ &= (a + c)++ && \text{Definition 2.2} \\ a + b &= a + c && \text{Axiom 2.4} \\ b &= c && \text{Induction hypothesis} \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

- **Positive natural numbers:** A natural number  $n \neq 0$ .

**Proposition 2.6.** *If  $a$  is positive and  $b$  is a natural number, then  $a + b$  is positive (and hence  $b + a$  is also by Proposition 2.4).*

*Proof.* We induct on  $b$  (keeping  $a$  fixed). In the base case, if  $b = 0$ , then  $a + 0 = a$  (a positive number) by Lemma 2.1. Suppose inductively that  $a + b$  is positive. Then  $a + (b++) = (a + b)++$  by Lemma 2.2, and  $(a + b)++$  is positive by Axiom 2.3 —  $a + (b++)$  is equal to the successor of a natural number, and the successor of a natural number is never 0, thus always positive. This closes the induction.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.1.** *If  $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $a + b = 0$ , then  $a = 0$  and  $b = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $a \neq 0$  or  $b \neq 0$ . If  $a \neq 0$ , then  $a$  is positive, and hence  $a + b = 0$  is positive by Proposition 2.6, a contradiction. Similarly, if  $b \neq 0$ , then  $b$  is positive, and hence  $a + b = 0$  is positive by Proposition 2.6, a contradiction. Thus,  $a$  and  $b$  must both be zero.  $\square$

- See Exercise 2.2.2 for another property of positive natural numbers.
- With addition, we can begin to order the natural numbers.

**Definition 2.3** (Ordering of the natural numbers). Let  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ . We say that  $n$  is **greater than or equal to**  $m$  and write  $n \geq m$  or  $m \leq n$  iff we have  $n = m + a$  for some  $a \in \mathbb{N}$ . We say that  $n$  is **strictly greater than**  $m$  and write  $n > m$  or  $m < n$  iff  $n \geq m$  and  $n \neq m$ .

- Note that  $n++ > n$  for any  $n$ .
- See Exercise 2.2.3 for more on ordering.
- We can now prove the trichotomy.

**Proposition 2.7** (Trichotomy of order for natural numbers). *Let  $a$  and  $b$  be natural numbers. Then exactly one of the following statements is true:  $a < b$ ,  $a = b$ , or  $a > b$ .*

*Proof.* See Exercise 2.2.4 to fill in the gaps.

First, show that no two (or three) of the statements can hold simultaneously. If  $a < b$  or  $a > b$ , then  $a \neq b$  by definition. Also, if  $a > b$  and  $a < b$ , then  $a = b$ , a contradiction.

Second, show that at least one of the statements is always true. We induct on  $a$  (keeping  $b$  fixed). When  $a = 0$ , we have  $0 \leq b$  for all  $b$  (see Exercise 2.2.4a), so we either have  $0 = b$  or  $0 < b$ , which proves the base case. Now suppose inductively that we have proven the proposition for  $a$ . From the trichotomy of  $a$ , there are three cases:  $a < b$ ,  $a = b$ , and  $a > b$ . If  $a > b$ , then  $a++ > b$  (see Exercise 2.2.4b). If  $a = b$ , then  $a++ > b$  (see Exercise 2.2.4c). If  $a < b$ , then  $a++ \leq b$  by Exercise 2.2.3e. Thus, either  $a++ = b$  or  $a++ < b$ . This closes the induction.  $\square$

- 6/17: • With order, we can obtain a stronger version of induction (see Exercise 2.2.5).
- Strong induction is usually used with  $m_0 = 0$  or  $m_0 = 1$ .

## Exercises

- 6/16: 1. Prove the following proposition. Hint: fix two of the variables and induct on the third.

**Proposition 2.8** (Addition is associative). *For any natural numbers  $a, b, c$ , we have  $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$ .*

*Proof.* We first need a lemma.

**Lemma 2.3.** *The sum of two natural numbers  $n + m$  is a natural number.*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). By Axiom 2.1,  $0 \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , by Definition 2.2,  $0 + m$  (the sum of two natural numbers) equals  $m$  (a natural number). Thus, the base case holds. Suppose inductively that  $n + m$  is a natural number. Then  $(n++) + m = (n + m)++$  by Definition 2.2,  $n + m$  is a natural number by the induction hypothesis, and  $(n + m)++$  is a natural number by Axiom 2.2. This closes the induction.  $\square$

Now we induct on  $a$  (keeping  $b, c$  fixed). By the lemma,  $b + c$  is a natural number and can be treated as such. Consider the base case  $a = 0$ . In this case,  $0 + (b + c) = b + c$  and  $0 + b = b$  by Definition 2.2, so  $0 + (b + c) = b + c = (0 + b) + c$ . Now suppose inductively that  $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a++) + (b + c) &= (a + (b + c))++ && \text{Definition 2.2} \\
 &= ((a + b) + c)++ && \text{Induction hypothesis} \\
 &= ((a + b)++) + c && \text{Definition 2.2} \\
 &= ((a++) + b) + c && \text{Definition 2.2}
 \end{aligned}$$

This closes the induction.  $\square$



2. Prove the following lemma. Hint: use induction.

**Lemma 2.4.** *Let  $a$  be a positive number. Then there exists exactly one natural number  $b$  such that  $b++ = a$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $a$ . Consider the base case  $a = 1$ .  $1 = 0++$  by definition, and by Axiom 2.4, 0 is the only  $b$  satisfying  $1 = b++$ . Now suppose inductively that  $a$  has only one  $b$  satisfying  $b++ = a$ . Then  $a++$  has only one natural number (namely  $a$ ) satisfying  $a++ = a++$ . This closes the induction.  $\square$

3. Prove the following proposition. Hint: you will need many of the preceding propositions, corollaries, and lemmas.

**Proposition 2.9** (Basic properties of order for natural numbers). *Let  $a, b, c$  be natural numbers. Then*

- (a) (Order is reflexive)  $a \geq a$ .

*Proof.* By Lemma 2.1,  $a = a + 0$ . The previous expression is in the form  $n = m + a$ ; thus, by Definition 2.3,  $a \geq a$ .  $\square$

- (b) (Order is transitive) If  $a \geq b$  and  $b \geq c$ , then  $a \geq c$ .

*Proof.* If  $a \geq b$  and  $b \geq c$ , then  $a = b + n$  and  $b = c + m$ , respectively, for some  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ . Substituting,  $a = (c + m) + n$ . By Proposition 2.8,  $a = c + (m + n)$ . By Lemma 2.3,  $m + n$  is a natural number. The previous expression is in the form  $n = m + a$ ; thus, by Definition 2.3,  $a \geq c$ .  $\square$

- (c) (Order is anti-symmetric) If  $a \geq b$  and  $b \geq a$ , then  $a = b$ .

*Proof.* If  $a \geq b$  and  $b \geq a$ , then  $a = b + n$  and  $b = a + m$ , respectively, for some  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ . Substituting,  $a = (a + m) + n$ . By Proposition 2.8,  $a = a + (m + n)$ . By Lemma 2.1,  $a + 0 = a + (m + n)$ . By Proposition 2.5,  $0 = m + n$ . By Corollary 2.1,  $m$  and  $n$  both equal 0. Thus,  $a = b + 0 = b$  (or  $b = a + 0 = a$ ) by Lemma 2.1.  $\square$

- (d) (Addition preserves order)  $a \geq b$  iff  $a + c \geq b + c$ .

*Proof.* If  $a + c \geq b + c$ , then  $a + c = (b + c) + n$  for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} c + a &= n + (b + c) && \text{Proposition 2.4} \\ c + a &= (n + b) + c && \text{Proposition 2.8} \\ c + a &= c + (n + b) && \text{Proposition 2.4} \\ a &= n + b && \text{Proposition 2.5} \\ a &= b + n && \text{Proposition 2.4} \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $a \geq b$ .  $\square$

- (e)  $a < b$  iff  $a++ \leq b$ .

*Proof.* If  $a++ \leq b$ , then  $b = (a++) + n$  for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} b &= (a + n)++ && \text{Definition 2.2} \\ &= a + (n++) && \text{Lemma 2.2} \end{aligned}$$

Since  $n++$  is a natural number (Axiom 2.2), the above proves that  $a \leq b$ . By Axiom 2.3,  $n++ \neq 0$ . Thus,  $b \neq a$  (suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $b = a$ . Then  $b = b + 0 = a + (n++)$  implies by Proposition 2.5 that  $0 = n++$ , a contradiction). By definition, since  $a \leq b$  and  $b \neq a$ ,  $a < b$ .  $\square$

- (f)  $a < b$  iff  $b = a + d$  for some positive number  $d$ .

*Proof.* As a positive number,  $d$  is a natural number by definition. Thus,  $b = a + d$  implies  $a \leq b$ . Since  $d$  is a positive number,  $d \neq 0$ . For the reasons outlined in the previous proof, this implies that  $b \neq a$ . Thus,  $a < b$ .  $\square$

4. Justify the three statements marked (why?) in the proof of Proposition 2.7.

(a) *If  $n$  is a natural number, then  $0 \leq n$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$ . By Exercise 2.2.3a,  $0 \geq 0$ , proving the base case. Suppose inductively that  $n \geq 0$ . We know that  $n++ \geq n$  (since  $n++ = (n+0)++ = n+0++$ ), so by Exercise 2.2.3b,  $n++ \geq n$  and  $n \geq 0$  transitively imply  $n++ \geq 0$ .  $\square$

(b) *Let  $a, b$  be natural numbers. Then if  $a > b$ ,  $a++ > b$ .*

*Proof.* We first need a lemma.

**Lemma 2.5.** *If  $a > b$  and  $b > c$ , then  $a > c$ .*

*Proof.* If  $a > b$  and  $b > c$ , then  $a = b + n$  and  $b = c + m$ , respectively, for some positive numbers  $n, m$ . Substituting,  $a = (c + m) + n$ . By Proposition 2.8,  $a = c + (m + n)$ . By Proposition 2.6,  $m + n$  is a positive number. Thus, by Exercise 2.2.3f,  $a > c$ .  $\square$

$a++ > a$ . By the lemma,  $a++ > a$  and  $a > b$  imply that  $a++ > b$ .  $\square$

(c) *Let  $a, b$  be natural numbers. Then if  $a = b$ ,  $a++ > b$ .*

*Proof.*  $a++ > a$ . Since  $a = b$ , substituting gives  $a++ > b$ .  $\square$

6/17: 5. Prove the following proposition. Hint: define  $Q(n)$  to be the property that  $P(m)$  is true for all  $m_0 \leq m < n$ ; note that  $Q(n)$  is vacuously true when  $n < m_0$ .

**Proposition 2.10** (Strong principle of induction). *Let  $m_0$  be a natural number, and let  $P(m)$  be a property pertaining to an arbitrary natural number  $m$ . Suppose that for each  $m \geq m_0$ , we have the following implication: if  $P(m')$  is true for all natural numbers  $m_0 \leq m' < m$ , then  $P(m)$  is also true. (In particular, this means that  $P(m_0)$  is true, since in this case the hypothesis is vacuous.) Then we can conclude that  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \geq m_0$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $n$  be a natural number satisfying  $n \geq m_0$  and let  $Q(n)$  be the property that  $P(m)$  is true for all  $m_0 \leq m < n$ . We induct on  $n$ .

For the base case  $n = 0$ , we want to show that  $Q(0)$  is true. Since  $0 \leq m_0$  (Exercise 2.2.4a), either  $0 = m_0$  or  $0 < m_0$  (Proposition 2.7). We treat these cases separately. If  $0 = m_0$ , then  $Q(0)$  is vacuously true (since there is no  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $0 \leq m < 0$ , of course  $P(m)$  is true for all  $0 \leq m < 0$  [because there are no cases,  $P(m)$  is true in all cases; it's also false, but that's besides the point.]) If  $0 < m_0$ , then  $Q(0)$  is also vacuously true (since there is no  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $0 < m_0 \leq m < 0$ ).

Suppose inductively that for some  $n \geq m_0$ ,  $Q(n)$  is true, i.e., " $P(m)$  is true for all  $m_0 \leq m < n$ " is true. We want to show that  $Q(n++)$  is true. By the definition of  $P$  in the hypothesis,  $Q(n)$  is true implies  $P(n)$  is true. Thus,  $P(m)$  is true for all  $m_0 \leq m < n++$ , so  $Q(n++)$  is true. This closes the induction.

Since  $Q(n)$  is true for all  $n \geq m_0$ ,  $P(n)$  is true for all  $n \geq m_0$  (proof modified from Ojo, 2019).  $\square$

6. Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $P(m)$  be a property pertaining to the natural numbers such that whenever  $P(m++)$  is true, then  $P(m)$  is true. Suppose that  $P(n)$  is also true. Prove that  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \leq n$ ; this is known as the **principle of backwards induction**. Hint: apply induction to the variable  $n$ .

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$ . For the base case  $n = 0$ , we want to show that  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \leq n$ . Since we are supposing that  $P(n) = P(0)$  is true and 0 is the only number  $m \in \mathbb{N}$  satisfying  $m \leq 0$ , the base case is true.

Suppose inductively that we have proved for  $P(n)$  true that  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \leq n$ . We want to show that for  $P(n++)$  true,  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \leq n++$ . If  $P(n++)$  is true, then clearly  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m = n$ . By definition,  $P(n++)$  true implies  $P(n)$  true, and  $P(n)$  true implies that  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \leq n$ . Thus,  $P(m)$  is true for all natural numbers  $m \leq n$  or  $m = n++$ ; these two statements can be combined into  $m \leq n++$ . This closes the induction.  $\square$

## 2.3 Multiplication

- 6/18:
- At this point, all properties of addition can be used without supplying a justification.
  - The definition of multiplication is very similar to the definition of addition.

**Definition 2.4** (Multiplication of natural numbers). Let  $m$  be a natural number. To multiply 0 to  $m$ , we define  $0 \times m := 0$ . Now suppose inductively that we have defined how to multiply  $n$  to  $m$ . Then we can multiply  $n++$  to  $m$  by defining  $(n++) \times m := (n \times m) + m$ .

- See Exercise 2.3.1 for a proof of the commutativity of multiplication.
- At this point, we abbreviate  $n \times m$  as  $nm$  and use the convention that multiplication takes precedence over addition (i.e.,  $ab + c = (a \times b) + c$ ).
- See Exercise 2.3.2 for a proof of the zero product property.
- We can now prove the distributive law.

**Proposition 2.11** (Distributive law). *For any natural numbers  $a, b, c$ , we have  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$  and  $(b + c)a = ba + ca$ .*

*Proof*<sup>[5]</sup>. Since multiplication is commutative, we need only show the first identity  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ . We keep  $a$  and  $b$  fixed, and use induction on  $c$ . Let's prove the base case  $c = 0$ , i.e.,  $a(b + 0) = ab + a0$ . The left-hand side is  $ab$ , while the right-hand side is  $ab + 0 = ab$ , so we are done with the base case. Now let us suppose inductively that  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ , and let us prove that  $a(b + (c++)) = ab + a(c++)$ . The left-hand side is  $a((b + c)++) = a(b + c) + a$ , while the right-hand side is  $ab + ac + a = a(b + c) + a$  by the induction hypothesis, and so we can close the induction.  $\square$

- See Exercise 2.3.3 for a proof of the associativity of multiplication.
- Bringing back order, we can prove that multiplication preserves order.

**Proposition 2.12** (Multiplication preserves order). *If  $a, b$  are natural numbers such that  $a < b$ , and  $c$  is positive, then  $ac < bc$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $a < b$ , we have  $b = a + d$  for some positive  $d$ . Multiplying by  $c$  and using the distributive law, we obtain  $bc = ac + dc$ . Since  $c, d$  are positive,  $dc$  is positive, and hence  $ac < bc$  as desired.  $\square$

- Although we still haven't introduced division, we can introduce a multiplicative analogy of the cancellation law.

**Corollary 2.2** (Cancellation law). *Let  $a, b, c$  be natural numbers such that  $ac = bc$  and  $c$  is non-zero. Then  $a = b$ .*

---

<sup>5</sup>Note that this could be accomplished by induction on  $a$ . However, for the sake of introducing new concepts, I will transcribe the alternative method from Tao, 2016.

*Proof*<sup>[6]</sup>. By the Proposition 2.7, we have three cases:  $a < b$ ,  $a = b$ , or  $a > b$ . Suppose first that  $a < b$ , then by Proposition 2.12, we have  $ac < bc$ , which contradicts our hypothesis that  $ac = bc$ . We can obtain a similar contradiction when  $a > b$ . Thus, the only possibility is that  $a = b$ , as desired.  $\square$

- At this point, we can deduce all of the rules of algebra involving addition and multiplication (see Exercise 2.3.4 for such an example).
- With addition and multiplication now defined, we will rarely see incrementation moving forward. Regardless, we can always use  $n++ = n + 1$  to describe it (this is not circular since  $n + 1$  was originally defined from  $n++$ ).
- See Exercise 2.3.5 for a proof of the Euclidean algorithm.
  - This algorithm marks the beginning of **number theory**, which is important but will not be covered any further in this text.
- The definition of exponentiation is very similar to the definitions of addition and multiplication.

**Definition 2.5** (Exponentiation of natural numbers). Let  $m$  be a natural number. To raise  $m$  to the power 0, we define  $m^0 := 1$ ; in particular, we define  $0^0 := 1$ . Now suppose recursively that  $m^n$  has been defined for some natural number  $n$ . Then we define  $m^{n++} := m^n \times m$ .

- Exponentiation will not be explored too deeply here — wait until after we define the integers and rationals.

## Exercises

1. Prove the following lemma. Hint: modify the proofs of Lemmas 2.1 and 2.2 and Proposition 2.4.

**Lemma 2.6** (Multiplication is commutative). *Let  $n, m$  be natural numbers. Then  $n \times m = m \times n$ .*

*Proof.* We first need two lemmas.

**Lemma 2.7.** *For any natural number  $n$ ,  $n \times 0 = 0$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$ . For the base case  $n = 0$ , Definition 2.4 gives us  $0 \times 0 = 0$ . Suppose inductively that  $n \times 0 = 0$ . Then  $(n++) \times 0 = (n \times 0) + 0$  by Definition 2.4, which equals  $0 + 0$  by the induction hypothesis, which equals 0. This closes the induction.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.8.** *Let  $n, m$  be natural numbers. Then  $n \times (m++) = (n \times m) + n$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). For the base case  $n = 0$ , Definition 2.4 gives us  $0 \times (m++) = 0$  and  $(0 \times m) + 0 = 0$ . Thus,  $0 \times (m++) = (0 \times m) + 0$ , proving the base case. Suppose inductively that  $n \times (m++) = (n \times m) + n$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (n++) \times (m++) &= (n \times (m++)) + m && \text{Definition 2.4} \\
 &= ((n \times m) + n) + m && \text{Induction hypothesis} \\
 &= ((n \times m) + m) + n \\
 &= ((n++) \times m) + n && \text{Definition 2.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

This closes the induction.  $\square$

---

<sup>6</sup>This could be accomplished by induction on  $c$ .

Now for the primary proof, we induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). For the base case  $n = 0$ , Definition 2.4 gives us  $0 \times m = 0$  while Lemma 2.7 gives us  $m \times 0 = 0$ . Thus,  $0 \times m = m \times 0$ , proving the base case. Now suppose inductively that  $n \times m = m \times n$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (n++) \times m &= (n \times m) + m && \text{Definition 2.4} \\ &= (m \times n) + m && \text{Induction hypothesis} \\ &= m \times (n++) && \text{Lemma 2.8} \end{aligned}$$

This closes the induction.  $\square$

2. Prove the following lemma. Hint: prove the second statement first.

**Lemma 2.9** (Positive natural numbers have no zero divisors). *Let  $n, m$  be natural numbers. Then  $n \times m = 0$  if and only if at least one of  $n, m$  is equal to zero. In particular, if  $n$  and  $m$  are both positive, then  $nm$  is also positive.*

*Proof.* We begin by proving the second statement. We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). For the base case,  $n$  is actually equal to 1 (since 1 is the smallest positive number). We want to show that  $1m$  is positive. By Definition 2.4,  $1m = 0m + m = 0 + m = m$ , which is positive by assumption. Suppose inductively that  $nm$  is positive. Then  $(n++)m = nm + m$ . Since  $nm + m$  is the sum of two positive numbers, it is positive (Proposition 2.6). This closes the induction.

Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $n, m$  are both positive natural numbers and  $nm = 0$ . Since  $nm = 0$ , it is not positive by definition. But this contradicts the previous assertion that  $nm$  must be positive if  $n, m$  are both positive. Thus, at least one of  $n, m$  is not positive, implying by definition that at least one of  $n, m$  is equal to 0.  $\square$

3. Prove the following proposition. Hint: modify the proof of Proposition 2.8 and use the distributive law.

**Proposition 2.13** (Multiplication is associative). *For any natural numbers  $a, b, c$ , we have  $(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$ .*

*Proof.* We first need a lemma.

**Lemma 2.10.** *For any natural numbers  $n, m$ , the product  $nm$  is a natural number.*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). For the base case  $n = 0$ ,  $0m = 0$  by Definition 2.4, which is a natural number. Now suppose inductively that  $nm$  is a natural number. Then  $(n++)m = nm + m$ , which is the sum of two natural numbers. By Lemma 2.3,  $nm + m$  is a natural number. This closes the induction.  $\square$

Now for the primary proof, we induct on  $a$  (keeping  $b, c$  fixed). For the base case  $a = 0$ ,  $(0 \times b) \times c = 0 \times c = 0$  by two applications of Definition 2.4. Also,  $0 \times (b \times c) = 0$  by Definition 2.4 and the lemma (which asserts that  $bc$  can be treated as a natural number). Thus,  $(0 \times b) \times c = 0 \times (b \times c)$  transitively, proving the base case. Now suppose inductively that  $(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} ((a++) \times b) \times c &= ((a \times b) + b) \times c && \text{Definition 2.4} \\ &= (a \times b) \times c + b \times c && \text{Proposition 2.11} \\ &= a \times (b \times c) + b \times c && \text{Induction hypothesis} \\ &= (a++) \times (b \times c) && \text{Definition 2.4} \end{aligned}$$

This closes the induction.  $\square$

4. Prove the identity  $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$  for all natural numbers  $a, b$ .

*Proof.* We first need two lemmas.

**Lemma 2.11.** *For any natural numbers  $n, m$ ,  $nm = \underbrace{m + \cdots + m}_{n \text{ times}}$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). For the base case  $n = 0$ ,  $0m = 0$  by Definition 2.4. 0 is equal to the sum of zero  $m$ 's, proving the base case. Suppose inductively that

$$nm = \underbrace{m + \cdots + m}_{n \text{ times}}$$

Then

$$(n++)m = nm + m = \underbrace{m + \cdots + m}_{n \text{ times}} + m = \underbrace{m + \cdots + m}_{n++ \text{ times}}$$

This closes the induction. □

**Lemma 2.12.** *For any natural numbers  $n, m$ ,  $m^n = \underbrace{m \times \cdots \times m}_{n \text{ times}}$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $m$  fixed). For the base case  $n = 0$ ,  $m^0 = 1$  by Definition 2.5. 1 is equal to the product of zero  $m$ 's, proving the base case. Suppose inductively that

$$m^n = \underbrace{m \times \cdots \times m}_{n \text{ times}}$$

Then

$$m^{n++} = m^n \times m = \underbrace{m \times \cdots \times m}_{n \text{ times}} \times m = \underbrace{m \times \cdots \times m}_{n++ \text{ times}}$$

This closes the induction. □

Now for the primary proof:

$$\begin{aligned} (a+b)^2 &= (a+b)(a+b) && \text{Lemma 2.12} \\ &= (a+b)a + (a+b)b && \text{Proposition 2.11} \\ &= aa + ba + ab + bb && \text{Proposition 2.11} \\ &= a^2 + ba + ab + b^2 && \text{Lemma 2.12} \\ &= a^2 + (ab + ab) + b^2 && \text{Lemma 2.6} \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 && \text{Lemma 2.11} \end{aligned}$$

□

5. Prove the following proposition. Hint: fix  $q$  and induct on  $n$ .

**Proposition 2.14** (Euclidean algorithm). *Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $q$  be a positive number. Then there exist natural numbers  $m, r$  such that  $0 \leq r < q$  and  $n = mq + r$ .*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (keeping  $q$  fixed). For the base case  $n = 0$ , choose  $m = 0$  and  $r = 0$ . In both cases, 0 is a natural number, and in the latter case, 0 satisfies  $0 \leq 0 < q$  since  $0 \leq 0$  by Exercise 2.2.3a and  $0 < q$  for all positive  $q$ . Since  $m, r$  meet all necessary conditions,  $0q + 0 = 0$  by Definition 2.4 and 2.2, and  $n = 0$  by hypothesis, the base case holds.

Suppose inductively that  $n = mq + r$ . We want to show that  $n++ = m'q + r'$  for some  $m', r'$  satisfying the conditions that  $m$  and  $r$  must satisfy, respectively. To begin, we can show an equality between  $m, r$  and  $m', r'$  as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} m'q + r' &= n++ \\ &= n + 1 \\ &= mq + r + 1 \end{aligned}$$

From this, it would seem logical to choose  $m' := m$  and  $r' := r + 1$ . However, since  $r < q$ ,  $r + 1 \leq q$ , so by Proposition 2.7 we have two cases to consider. If  $r + 1 < q$ , it will indeed suffice to choose  $m' := m$  and  $r' := r + 1$ . Both of these choices satisfy all of the necessary requirements. If  $r + 1 = q$ , we must choose differently. Choose  $m' := m + 1$  and  $r' := 0$ . It may be more difficult to understand these choices, but they do work:  $m + 1$  and  $0$  are both natural numbers,  $0$  satisfies  $0 \leq 0 < q$  as discussed earlier, and the following shows that the choices maintain the equality with  $n++$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (m + 1)q + 0 &= mq + q \\ &= mq + r + 1 \\ &= n + 1 \\ &= n++ \end{aligned}$$

With both cases treated, the induction may be closed. □

# Chapter 3

## Set Theory

- 7/4:
- Set theory will be frequently used in the subsequent chapters; it is part of the foundation of almost every other branch of mathematics.
    - Note that Euclidean geometry will not be defined — we will use the Cartesian coordinate system's parallel with the real numbers instead.
  - This chapter covers the elementary aspects, Chapter ?? covers more advanced topics, and the finer subtleties are well beyond the scope of this text.

### 3.1 Fundamentals

- We define sets axiomatically, as we did with the natural numbers<sup>[1]</sup>.

**Axiom 3.1** (Sets are objects). *If  $A$  is a set, then  $A$  is also an object. In particular, given two sets  $A$  and  $B$ , it is meaningful to ask whether  $A$  is also an element of  $B$ .*

- Note that while all sets are objects, not all objects are sets.
  - For example,  $1$  is not a set while  $\{1\}$  is.
  - Note, though, that **pure set theory** considers all objects to be sets. However, impure set theory (where some objects are not sets) is conceptually easier to deal with.
    - Since both types are equal for the purposes of mathematics, we will take a middle-ground approach.
- If  $x, y$  are objects and  $A$  a set, then the statement  $x \in A$  is either true or false. Note that  $x \in y$  is neither true nor false, simply meaningless.
- We now define equality for sets.

**Definition 3.1** (Equality of sets). Two sets  $A$  and  $B$  are equal,  $A = B$ , iff every element of  $A$  is an element of  $B$  and vice versa. To put it another way,  $A = B$  if and only if every element  $x$  of  $A$  belongs also to  $B$ , and every element  $y$  of  $B$  belongs also to  $A$ .

- Note that this implies that repetition of elements does not effect equality ( $\{3, 3\} = \{3\}$ , for example).
- It can be proven that this notion of equality is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive (see Exercise 3.1.1).

- 7/14:
- Since  $x \in A$  and  $A = B$  implies  $x \in B$ , the  $\in$  relation obeys the axiom of substitution as well.

---

<sup>1</sup>Note that the following list of axioms will be somewhat overcomplete, as some axioms may be derived from others. However, this is helpful for pedagogical reasons, and there is no real harm being done.



- Thus, any operation defined in terms of the  $\in$  relation obeys the axiom of substitution.
- We define sets in an analogous way to how we defined natural numbers from 0, onward.

**Axiom 3.2** (Empty set). *There exists a set  $\emptyset$  (also denoted  $\{\}$ ), known as the empty set, which contains no elements, i.e., for every object  $x$ , we have  $x \notin \emptyset$ .*

- Note that there is only one empty set — if  $\emptyset$  and  $\emptyset'$  were supposedly distinct empty sets, then Definition 3.1 would prove that  $\emptyset = \emptyset'$ .

- **Non-empty set:** A set that “is not equal to the empty set” (Tao, 2016, p. 36).
- Non-empty sets must contain at least one object.

**Lemma 3.1** (Single choice). *Let  $A$  be a non-empty set. Then there exists an object  $x$  such that  $x \in A$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that no object  $x$  exists such that  $x \in A$ , i.e., for all objects  $x$ , we have  $x \notin A$ . By Axiom 3.2, we have  $x \notin \emptyset$  either. Thus,  $x \in A \iff x \in \emptyset$  (denoting logical equivalence; both statements are equally false), so, by Definition 3.1,  $A = \emptyset$ , a contradiction.  $\square$

- There exist more sets than just the empty set.

**Axiom 3.3** (Singleton sets and pair sets). *If  $a$  is an object, then there exists a set  $\{a\}$  whose only element is  $a$ , i.e., for every object  $y$ , we have  $y \in \{a\}$  if and only if  $y = a$ ; we refer to  $\{a\}$  as the **singleton set** whose element is  $a$ . Furthermore, if  $a$  and  $b$  are objects, then there exists a set  $\{a, b\}$  whose elements are  $a$  and  $b$ ; i.e., for every object  $y$ , we have  $y \in \{a, b\}$  if and only if  $y = a$  or  $y = b$ ; we refer to this set as the **pair set** formed by  $a$  and  $b$ .*

- By Definition 3.1, there exists only one singleton set for each object  $a$  and only one pair set for any two objects  $a, b$ .
- Note that the singleton set axiom follows from the pair set axiom, and the pair set axiom follows from the singleton set axiom and the pairwise union axiom, below.
- As alluded to, the pairwise union axiom allows us to build sets with more than two elements.

**Axiom 3.4** (Pairwise union). *Given any two sets  $A, B$ , there exists a set  $A \cup B$  called the **union**  $A \cup B$  of  $A$  and  $B$ , whose elements consist of all the elements which belong to  $A$  or  $B$  or both. In other words, for any object  $x$ ,*

$$x \in A \cup B \iff (x \in A \text{ or } x \in B)$$

- The  $\cup$  operation obeys the axiom of substitution (if  $A = A'$ , then  $A \cup B = A' \cup B$ ).
- We now prove some basic properties of unions (one below and three in Exercise 3.1.3).

**Lemma 3.2.** *If  $A, B, C$  are sets, then the union operation is associative, i.e.,  $(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C)$ .*

*Proof.* By Definition 3.1, showing that every element  $x$  of  $(A \cup B) \cup C$  is an element of  $A \cup (B \cup C)$  and vice versa will suffice to prove this lemma. Suppose first that  $x \in (A \cup B) \cup C$ . By Axiom 3.4, this means that at least one of  $x \in A \cup B$  or  $x \in C$  is true. We now divide into two cases. If  $x \in C$ , then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in B \cup C$ , and, so, by Axiom 3.4 again, we have  $x \in A \cup (B \cup C)$ . Now suppose instead that  $x \in A \cup B$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ . If  $x \in A$ , then  $x \in A \cup (B \cup C)$  by Axiom 3.4, while if  $x \in B$ , then by consecutive applications of Axiom 3.4, we have  $x \in B \cup C$  and, hence,  $x \in A \cup (B \cup C)$ . A similar argument shows that every element of  $A \cup (B \cup C)$  lies in  $(A \cup B) \cup C$ , and so  $(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C)$ , as desired.  $\square$

- As a consequence of the above, we are free to write  $A \cup B \cup C \cup \dots$  to denote repeated unions without having to use parentheses.

- We can also now define triplet sets ( $\{a, b, c\} := \{a\} \cup \{b\} \cup \{c\}$ ), quadruplet sets, and so forth.
  - However, we cannot yet define a set of  $n$  objects or an infinite set.
- Note that addition and union are analogous, but importantly *not* identical.
- Some sets are “larger” than others; hence, subsets.

**Definition 3.2** (Subsets). Let  $A, B$  be sets. We say that  $A$  is a **subset** of  $B$ , denoted  $A \subseteq B$ , iff every element of  $A$  is also an element of  $B$ , i.e., for any object  $x$ ,  $x \in A \implies x \in B$ . We say that  $A$  is a **proper subset** of  $B$ , denoted  $A \subsetneq B$  if  $A \subseteq B$  and  $A \neq B$ .

- The  $\subseteq$  and  $\subsetneq$  operations obey the axiom of substitution (since both  $=$  and  $\in$ , the two component operations of  $\subseteq$  and  $\subsetneq$ , obey it).
- Note that  $A \subseteq A$  and  $\emptyset \subseteq A$  for any set  $A$ .
- Note that less than or equal to and subset are analogous, but not identical, either (see below for one related property and Exercise 3.1.4 for two more).

**Proposition 3.1** (Sets are partially ordered by set inclusion 1). *Let  $A, B, C$  be sets. If  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq C$ , then  $A \subseteq C$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose that  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq C$ . To prove that  $A \subseteq C$ , we have to prove that every element of  $A$  is an element of  $C$ . Let  $x \in A$ . Then  $x \in B$  (since  $A \subseteq B$ ), implying that  $x \in C$  (since  $B \subseteq C$ ).  $\square$

- There exist relations between subsets and unions (see Exercise 3.1.7).
- Note this difference between  $\subsetneq$  and  $<$ : Given any two distinct natural numbers  $n, m$ , one is smaller than the other (Proposition 2.7). However, given any two distinct sets, it is not in general true that one is a subset of the other. This is why we say that sets are **partially ordered** while the natural numbers (for example) are **totally ordered** (see Definitions ?? and ??, respectively).
- Note that  $\in$  and  $\subseteq$  are distinct ( $2 \in \{1, 2, 3\}$ , but  $2 \not\subseteq \{1, 2, 3\}$ ; similarly,  $\{2\} \subseteq \{1, 2, 3\}$ , but  $\{2\} \notin \{1, 2, 3\}$ ).
- It is important to distinguish sets from their elements, for they can have different properties ( $\mathbb{N}$  is an infinite set of finite elements, and  $\{\mathbb{N}, \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R}\}$  is a finite set of infinite objects).
- We now formally state that it is acceptable to create subsets.

**Axiom 3.5** (Axiom of specification). *Let  $A$  be a set, and for each  $x \in A$ , let  $P(x)$  be a property pertaining to  $x$  (i.e.,  $P(x)$  is either a true statement or a false statement). Then there exists a set, called  $\{x \in A : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  (or simply  $\{x \in A : P(x)\}$  for short), whose elements are precisely the elements  $x$  in  $A$  for which  $P(x)$  is true. In other words, for any object  $y$ ,*

$$y \in \{x \in A : P(x) \text{ is true}\} \iff (y \in A \text{ and } P(y) \text{ is true})$$

- Also known as **axiom of separation**.
- Specification obeys the axiom of substitution (since  $\in$  obeys it).
- Sometimes  $\{x \in A : P(x)\}$  is denoted by  $\{x \in A \mid P(x)\}$  (useful when we need the colon for something else, e.g.,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ).
- We use Axiom 3.5 to define intersections.

**Definition 3.3** (Intersections). The **intersection**  $S_1 \cap S_2$  of two sets is defined to be the set

$$S_1 \cap S_2 := \{x \in S_1 : x \in S_2\}$$

In other words,  $S_1 \cap S_2$  consists of all the elements which belong to both  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ . Thus, for all objects  $x$ ,

$$x \in S_1 \cap S_2 \iff x \in S_1 \text{ and } x \in S_2$$

- The  $\cap$  operation obeys the axiom of substitution (since  $\in$  obeys it).
  - Note that since  $\cap$  is defined in terms of more primitive operations, it is well-defined.
- Problems with the English word, “and.”
  - It can mean union or intersection depending on the context.
    - If  $X, Y$  are sets, “the set of elements of  $X$  and elements of  $Y$ ” refers to  $X \cup Y$ , e.g., “the set of singles and males.”
    - If  $X, Y$  are sets, “the set of objects that are elements of  $X$  and elements of  $Y$ ” refers to  $X \cap Y$ , e.g., “the set of people who are single and male.”
  - It can also denote addition.
    - “2 and 3 is 5” means  $2 + 3 = 5$ .
  - “One reason we resort to mathematical symbols instead of English words such as ‘and’ is that mathematical symbols always have a precise and unambiguous meaning, whereas one must often look very carefully at the context in order to work out what an English word means” (Tao, 2016, p. 42).
- **Disjoint** (sets): Two sets  $A, B$  such that  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ .
- **Distinct** (sets): Two sets  $A, B$  such that  $A \neq B$ .
  - Note that  $\emptyset$  and  $\emptyset$  are disjoint but not distinct.
- We also use Axiom 3.5 to define difference sets.

**Definition 3.4** (Difference sets). Given two sets  $A$  and  $B$ , we define the set  $A - B$  or  $A \setminus B$  to be the set  $A$  with any elements of  $B$  removed, i.e.,

$$A \setminus B := \{x \in A : x \notin B\}$$

- For example,  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\} \setminus \{2, 4, 6\} = \{1, 3\}$  — in many cases,  $B \subseteq A$ , but not necessarily.
- 7/15: • See Exercise 3.1.6 for some basic properties of unions, intersections, and difference sets.
  - The de Morgan laws are named after the logician Augustus De Morgan (1806-1871).
  - The **laws of Boolean algebra** (the contents of Proposition 3.4) are named after the mathematician George Boole (1815-1864).
    - They are applicable to a number of objects other than sets (e.g., laws of propositional logic).
  - Note the **duality** in Proposition 3.4, manifesting itself in the certain symmetry between  $\cup$  and  $\cap$ , and  $X$  and  $\emptyset$ .
- **Duality**: “Two distinct properties or objects being dual to each other” (Tao, 2016, p. 43).
- We can do a lot, but we still wish to do more. For example, we’d like to transform sets (say, take  $\{3, 5, 9\}$  and increment each object to yield  $\{4, 6, 10\}$ ).

**Axiom 3.6** (Replacement). *Let  $A$  be a set. For any object  $x \in A$ , and any object  $y$ , suppose we have a statement  $P(x, y)$  pertaining to  $x$  and  $y$  such that for each  $x \in A$ , there is at most one  $y$  for which  $P(x, y)$  is true. Then there exists a set  $\{y : P(x, y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\}$ , such that for any object  $z$ ,*

$$z \in \{y : P(x, y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\} \iff P(x, z) \text{ is true for some } x \in A$$

- For example, let  $A := \{3, 5, 9\}$  and let  $P(x, y)$  be the statement  $y = x++$ . By Axiom 2.4, for every  $x \in A$ , there is exactly one  $y$  for which  $P(x, y)$  is true (namely, the successor of  $x$ ). Thus, by Axiom 3.6, the set  $\{y : y = x++ \text{ for some } x \in \{3, 5, 9\}\}$  exists. It is clearly the same set as  $\{4, 6, 10\}$ .
- The set obtained can be smaller than the original set, e.g.,  $\{y : y = 1 \text{ for some } x \in \{3, 5, 9\}\} = \{1\}$ .
- We often abbreviate the set specified in Axiom 3.6 to one of the following.

$$\begin{aligned} &\{y : y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A\} \\ &\{f(x) : x \in A\} \\ &\{f(x) \mid x \in A\} \end{aligned}$$

- We can combine Axioms 3.6 and 3.5, i.e.,  $\{f(x) : x \in A; P(x) \text{ is true}\}$ , e.g.,  $\{n++ : n \in \{3, 5, 9\}; n < 6\} = \{4, 6\}$ .
- Although we have assumed that natural numbers are objects in several examples up to this point, we must formalize this notion.

**Axiom 3.7** (Infinity). *There exists a set  $\mathbb{N}$ , whose elements are called the natural numbers, as well as an object 0 in  $\mathbb{N}$ , and an object  $n++$  assigned to every natural number  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , such that the Peano axioms hold.*

- Axiom 3.7 is called the **axiom of infinity** because “it introduces the most basic example of an infinite set, namely the set of natural numbers  $\mathbb{N}$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 44).

## Exercises

- 7/4: 1. Show that the definition of equality in Definition 3.1 is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive<sup>[2]</sup>.

*Proof.* Given a set  $A$ , suppose  $A \neq A$ . Then, by Definition 3.1, every element of  $A$  is not an element of  $A$ , a contradiction. Thus,  $A = A$ .

Let sets  $A = B$ . Then, by Definition 3.1, every element  $x$  of  $A$  belongs also to  $B$ , and every element  $y$  of  $B$  belongs also to  $A$ . Identically, every element  $y$  of  $B$  belongs also to  $A$ , and every element  $x$  of  $A$  belongs also to  $B$ . Thus,  $B = A$ .

Let sets  $A = B$  and  $B = C$ . Then, by Definition 3.1, every element  $x$  of  $A$  belongs also to  $B$ , and every element  $y$  of  $B$  belongs also to  $A$ . Similarly, every element  $y$  of  $B$  belongs also to  $C$ , and every element  $z$  of  $C$  belongs also to  $B$ . Since  $x \in A \Rightarrow x \in B \Rightarrow x \in C$ , and  $y \in C \Rightarrow y \in B \Rightarrow y \in A$ ,  $A = C$ .  $\square$

- 7/14: 2. Using only Definition 3.1, Axiom 3.1, Axiom 3.2, and Axiom 3.3, prove that the sets  $\emptyset$ ,  $\{\emptyset\}$ ,  $\{\{\emptyset\}\}$ , and  $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$  are all distinct (i.e., no two of them are equal to each other).

*Proof.* First, we show that all sets are distinct from the empty set. Axiom 3.1 asserts that  $\emptyset$  and  $\{\emptyset\}$  are objects. By Axiom 3.3, we have  $\emptyset \in \{\emptyset\}$ ,  $\emptyset \in \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$ , and  $\{\emptyset\} \in \{\{\emptyset\}\}$ . Since  $x \notin \emptyset$  for all objects  $x$  (Axiom 3.2),  $\{\emptyset\}$ ,  $\{\{\emptyset\}\}$ , and  $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$  all contain objects that  $\emptyset$  does not (namely,  $\emptyset$ ,  $\{\emptyset\}$ , and  $\emptyset$ , respectively). Thus, by Definition 3.1,  $\emptyset \neq \{\emptyset\}$ ,  $\emptyset \neq \{\{\emptyset\}\}$ , and  $\emptyset \neq \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$ .

<sup>2</sup>Note that since Definition 3.1 should be an axiom (should axiomatize equality and all that that entails for sets), this exercise is silly (see Tao, 2020).

Next, we show that  $\{\emptyset\} \neq \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$ . By Axiom 3.3,  $\{\emptyset\} \in \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$  and  $y \in \{\emptyset\}$  iff  $y = \emptyset$ . Since  $\{\emptyset\} \neq \emptyset$  (see above),  $\{\emptyset\} \notin \{\emptyset\}$ . Thus,  $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$  contains an object that  $\{\emptyset\}$  does not, implying by Definition 3.1 that  $\{\emptyset\} \neq \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$ .

Lastly, we show that  $\{\emptyset\} \neq \{\{\emptyset\}\}$  and that  $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\} \neq \{\{\emptyset\}\}$ . We proceed in a similar manner to the above. By Axiom 3.3,  $\emptyset \in \{\emptyset\}$ ,  $\emptyset \in \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$ , and  $y \in \{\{\emptyset\}\}$  iff  $y = \{\emptyset\}$ . Since  $\emptyset \neq \{\emptyset\}$  (see above),  $\emptyset \notin \{\{\emptyset\}\}$ . Thus,  $\{\emptyset\}$  and  $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}$  both contain an object that  $\{\{\emptyset\}\}$  does not, implying by Definition 3.1 that  $\{\emptyset\} \neq \{\{\emptyset\}\}$  and that  $\{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\} \neq \{\{\emptyset\}\}$ . □

3. Prove the following lemmas.

**Lemma 3.3.** *If  $a$  and  $b$  are objects, then  $\{a, b\} = \{a\} \cup \{b\}$ .*

*Proof.* By Definition 3.1, it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $\{a, b\}$  is an element of  $\{a\} \cup \{b\}$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.3, if  $x \in \{a, b\}$ , then  $x = a$  or  $x = b$ . By Axiom 3.4, if  $x \in \{a\} \cup \{b\}$ , then  $x \in \{a\}$  or  $x \in \{b\}$ , implying by Axiom 3.3 that  $x = a$  or  $x = b$ . Thus, the elements of  $\{a, b\}$  and of  $\{a\} \cup \{b\}$  are both  $a, b$ , so by Definition 3.1, the sets are equal. □

**Lemma 3.4.** *If  $A, B, C$  are sets, then the union operation is commutative, i.e.,  $A \cup B = B \cup A$ .*

*Proof.* By Definition 3.1, it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cup B$  is an element of  $B \cup A$  and vice versa. Let  $x \in A \cup B$ . By Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ . If, on the one hand,  $x \in A$ , then  $x \in B \cup A$  (by Axiom 3.4). If, on the other hand,  $x \in B$ , then  $x \in B \cup A$  (by Axiom 3.4). A similar argument holds if we choose an element  $y \in B \cup A$  first. □

**Lemma 3.5.** *If  $A$  is a set, then  $A = A \cup \emptyset = \emptyset \cup A = A \cup A$ .*

*Proof.* First, we show that  $A \cup \emptyset = \emptyset \cup A$ . This is a direct consequence of Lemma 3.3.

Next, we show that  $A = A \cup \emptyset$ . By Definition 3.1, it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A$  is an element of  $A \cup \emptyset$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.4, every element  $x$  of  $A$  is an element of  $A \cup \emptyset$ . Now let  $x \in A \cup \emptyset$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in \emptyset$ . By Axiom 3.2,  $x \notin \emptyset$ , so  $x \in A$ . Thus, every element of  $A \cup \emptyset$  is an element of  $A$ . We now have by the transitive property that  $A = A \cup \emptyset = \emptyset \cup A$ .

Lastly, we show that  $A = A \cup A$ . By Definition 3.1, it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A$  is an element of  $A \cup A$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.4, every element  $x$  of  $A$  is an element of  $A \cup A$ . Now let  $x \in A \cup A$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in A$ , implying  $x \in A$ . We have, at last, by the transitive property that  $A = A \cup \emptyset = \emptyset \cup A = A \cup A$ . □

4. Prove the following propositions.

**Proposition 3.2** (Sets are partially ordered by set inclusion 2). *Let  $A, B$  be sets. If  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq A$ , then  $A = B$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose that  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq A$ . By Definition 3.2,  $A \subseteq B$  implies that every element of  $A$  is also an element of  $B$  and  $B \subseteq A$  implies that every element of  $B$  is also an element of  $A$ . Thus, by Definition 3.1,  $A = B$ . □

**Proposition 3.3** (Sets are partially ordered by set inclusion 3). *Let  $A, B, C$  be sets. If  $A \subsetneq B$  and  $B \subsetneq C$ , then  $A \subsetneq C$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose that  $A \subsetneq B$  and  $B \subsetneq C$ . Then, by Definition 3.2,  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq C$ , implying  $A \subseteq C$  by the first claim proved. Since  $A \subsetneq B$ ,  $A \neq B$  (implying, by Definition 3.1, that every element of  $A$  is not an element of  $B$  or every element of  $B$  is not an element of  $A$ ) and every element of  $A$  is an element of  $B$ ; hence, every element of  $B$  is not an element of  $A$ . Therefore,  $B$  must contain some element that  $A$  does not. Similarly,  $B \subsetneq C$  implies that  $C$  must contain some element that  $B$  does not. Hence,  $C$  contains at least two elements that  $A$  does not, proving that  $A \neq C$ , too. □

5. Let  $A, B$  be sets. Show that the three statements  $A \subseteq B$ ,  $A \cup B = B$ , and  $A \cap B = A$  are logically equivalent (any one of them implies the other two).

*Proof.* First, we show that  $A \subseteq B \implies (A \cup B = B \text{ and } A \cap B = A)$ . Next, we show that  $A \cup B = B \implies A \subseteq B$  (which, in turn, implies  $A \cap B = A$ ). Lastly, we show that  $A \cap B = A \implies A \subseteq B$  (which, in turn, implies  $A \cup B = B$ ). Let's begin.

Suppose that  $A \subseteq B$ . To prove  $A \cup B = B$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cup B$  is an element of  $B$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.4,  $x \in B \implies x \in A \cup B$ . By Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A \cup B \implies (x \in A \text{ or } x \in B)$ . By Definition 3.2,  $A \subseteq B$  means that  $x \in A \implies x \in B$ . Thus,  $x \in A \cup B \implies (x \in A \text{ or } x \in B) \implies x \in B$ . Therefore, if  $A \subseteq B$ , then  $A \cup B = B$ . To prove that  $A \cap B = A$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cap B$  is an element of  $A$  and vice versa. By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap B \implies x \in A$  (and  $x \in B$ ). Since  $x \in A \implies x \in B$  (see above),  $x \in A \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B) \implies x \in A \cap B$  (Definition 3.3). Therefore, if  $A \subseteq B$ , then  $A \cap B = A$ .

Suppose that  $A \cup B = B$ . To prove  $A \subseteq B$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $A$  is also an element of  $B$ . By Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A \implies x \in A \cup B$ . By Definition 3.1,  $y \in A \cup B \implies y \in B$ . Thus,  $x \in A \implies x \in A \cup B \implies x \in B$ . Therefore, if  $A \cup B = B$ ,  $A \subseteq B$  (and  $A \cap B = A$ ).

Suppose that  $A \cap B = A$ . To prove that  $A \subseteq B$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $A$  is also an element of  $B$ . By Definition 3.1,  $x \in A \implies x \in A \cap B$ . By Definition 3.3,  $y \in A \cap B \implies y \in B$ . Thus,  $x \in A \implies x \in A \cap B \implies x \in B$ . Therefore, if  $A \cap B = A$ ,  $A \subseteq B$  (and  $A \cup B = B$ ).  $\square$

- 7/15: 6. Prove the following proposition. (Hint: one can use some of these claims to prove others. Some of the claims have also appeared previously in Lemma 3.2 and Exercise 3.1.3.)

**Proposition 3.4** (Sets form a boolean algebra). *Let  $A, B, C$  be sets, and let  $X$  be a set containing  $A, B, C$  as subsets.*

- (a) (Minimal element) *We have  $A \cup \emptyset = A$  and  $A \cap \emptyset = \emptyset$ .*

*Proof.* See Exercise 3.1.3 for the first claim.

To prove  $A \cap \emptyset = \emptyset$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cap \emptyset$  is an element of  $\emptyset$  and vice versa. First off, “every element  $x \in \emptyset$  is an element of  $A \cap \emptyset$ ” is vacuously true (by Axiom 3.2, there exists no  $x \in \emptyset$ ). In the other direction, suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \in A \cap \emptyset$  for some object  $x$ . By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A$  and  $x \in \emptyset$ . But  $x \in \emptyset$  contradicts Axiom 3.2. Therefore,  $x \notin A \cap \emptyset$  for all objects  $x$ . Thus, the statement “every element  $x \in A \cap \emptyset$  is an element of  $\emptyset$ ” is vacuously true (there exists no  $x \in A \cap \emptyset$ ).  $\square$

- (b) (Maximal element) *We have  $A \cup X = X$  and  $A \cap X = A$ .*

*Proof.* See Exercise 3.1.5.  $\square$

- (c) (Identity) *We have  $A \cap A = A$  and  $A \cup A = A$ .*

*Proof.* To prove that  $A \cap A = A$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cap A$  is an element of  $A$  and vice versa. By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap A \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in A) \implies x \in A$ . On the other hand,  $x \in A \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in A)$  (idempotent law for conjunction),  $(x \in A \text{ and } x \in A) \implies x \in \{x \in A : x \in A\}$  (Axiom 3.5), and  $x \in \{x \in A : x \in A\} \implies x \in A \cap A$  (Definition 3.3).

See Exercise 3.1.3 for the second claim.  $\square$

- (d) (Commutativity) *We have  $A \cup B = B \cup A$  and  $A \cap B = B \cap A$ .*

*Proof.* See Exercise 3.1.3 for the first claim.

To prove  $A \cap B = B \cap A$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cap B$  is an element of  $B \cap A$  and vice versa. By two applications of Definition 3.3 with the commutative law for conjunction in between,  $x \in A \cap B \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B) \implies (x \in B \text{ and } x \in A) \implies x \in B \cap A$ . A similar argument works in the opposite direction.  $\square$

- (e) (*Associativity*) We have  $(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C)$  and  $(A \cap B) \cap C = A \cap (B \cap C)$ .

*Proof.* See Lemma 3.2 for the first claim.

By Definition 3.1, showing that every element  $x$  of  $(A \cap B) \cap C$  is an element of  $A \cap (B \cap C)$  and vice versa will suffice to prove this lemma. Suppose first that  $x \in (A \cap B) \cap C$ . By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap B$  and  $x \in C$ , which implies by a second application of Definition 3.3 that  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B$  and  $x \in C$ . It follows by consecutive applications of Definition 3.3 that  $x \in A$  and  $x \in B \cap C$ , and that  $x \in A \cap (B \cap C)$ . A similar argument shows that every element of  $A \cap (B \cap C)$  lies in  $(A \cap B) \cap C$ .  $\square$

- (f) (*Distributivity*) We have  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$  and  $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$ .

*Proof.* To prove  $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cap (B \cup C)$  is an element of  $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$  and vice versa. By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap (B \cup C) \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B \cup C)$ . By Axiom 3.4,  $x \in B \cup C \implies x \in B$  or  $x \in C$ . Thus, we know that  $x \in A$ , and we know that  $x \in B$  or  $x \in C$  (or both). We divide into two cases. Suppose first that  $x \in B$ . Since  $x \in A$  as well,  $x \in A \cap B$  (Definition 3.3). This implies by Axiom 3.4 that  $x \in (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ . Now suppose that  $x \in C$ . Since  $x \in A$  as well,  $x \in A \cap C$  (Definition 3.3). This implies by Axiom 3.4 that  $x \in (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ . A similar argument shows that every element of  $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$  lies in  $A \cap (B \cup C)$ .

The second proof is similar to the first (and similar to all the rest of the proofs written for this exercise thus far). Thus, for the sake of variety, we will do this one entirely symbolically, using the laws of propositional logic from Section A.4.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in A \cup (B \cap C) &\implies (x \in A) \vee (x \in B \cap C) && \text{Axiom 3.4} \\
 &\implies (x \in A) \vee ((x \in B) \wedge (x \in C)) && \text{Definition 3.3} \\
 &\implies ((x \in A) \wedge (x \in B)) \vee ((x \in A) \wedge (x \in C)) && \text{Distributive law for disjunction} \\
 &\implies (x \in A \cap B) \vee (x \in A \cap C) && \text{Definition 3.3} \\
 &\implies x \in (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) && \text{Axiom 3.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

A similar argument works in reverse.  $\square$

- (g) (*Partition*) We have  $A \cup (X \setminus A) = X$  and  $A \cap (X \setminus A) = \emptyset$ .

*Proof.* To prove  $A \cup (X \setminus A) = X$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \cup (X \setminus A)$  is an element of  $X$  and vice versa. Suppose  $x \in A \cup (X \setminus A)$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in X \setminus A$ . We divide into two cases. Suppose first that  $x \in A$ . Since  $A \subseteq X$ , Definition 3.2 asserts that  $x \in X$ . Now suppose that  $x \in X \setminus A$ . This implies by Definition 3.4 that  $x \in \{y \in X : y \notin A\}$ , which means by Axiom 3.5 that  $x \in X$  (and  $x \notin A$ , but that's not relevant). On the other hand, suppose  $x \in X$ . Naturally, either  $x \in A$  or  $x \notin A$  ( $x \in A$  is false). If  $x \in A$ , then  $x \in A \cup (X \setminus A)$  (Axiom 3.4). If  $x \notin A$ , since  $x \in X$  as well, Axiom 3.5 asserts that  $x \in \{x \in X : x \notin A\}$ , which, by Definition 3.4, implies that  $x \in X \setminus A$ . This, in turn, implies that  $x \in A \cup (X \setminus A)$  (Axiom 3.4).

To prove  $A \cap (X \setminus A) = \emptyset$ , it suffices to prove that for every object  $x$ , we have  $x \notin A \cap (X \setminus A)$  (because of the uniqueness of the empty set). Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \in A \cap (X \setminus A)$  for some object  $x$ . By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A$  and  $x \in X \setminus A$ . By Definition 3.4,  $x \in \{y \in X : y \notin A\}$ . By Axiom 3.5,  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin A$ . But this contradicts the previously derived fact that  $x \in A$ . Therefore,  $x \notin A \cap (X \setminus A)$  for all objects  $x$ .  $\square$

- (h) (*De Morgan laws*) We have  $X \setminus (A \cup B) = (X \setminus A) \cap (X \setminus B)$  and  $X \setminus (A \cap B) = (X \setminus A) \cup (X \setminus B)$ .

*Proof.* To prove  $X \setminus (A \cup B) = (X \setminus A) \cap (X \setminus B)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $X \setminus (A \cup B)$  is an element of  $(X \setminus A) \cap (X \setminus B)$  and vice versa. Suppose that  $x \in X \setminus (A \cup B)$ . Then by Definition 3.4,  $x \in \{y \in X : y \notin A \cup B\}$ . By Axiom 3.5,  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin A \cup B$ . By the inverse of Axiom 3.4 (which is a valid assertion since Axiom 3.4 asserts the logical equivalence of “ $x \in A \cup B$ ” and “ $x \in A$  and  $x \in B$ ”),  $x \notin A \cup B \implies (x \notin A \text{ and } x \notin B)$ . By Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4,  $(x \in X \text{ and } x \notin A) \implies x \in \{y \in X : y \notin A\} \implies x \in X \setminus A$ . Similarly,  $(x \in X \text{ and } x \notin B) \implies x \in \{y \in X : y \notin B\} \implies x \in X \setminus B$ . Thus, by Definition 3.3,  $x \in (X \setminus A) \cap (X \setminus B)$ . A similar, reversed argument will work in the other direction.

To prove  $X \setminus (A \cap B) = (X \setminus A) \cup (X \setminus B)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $X \setminus (A \cap B)$  is an element of  $(X \setminus A) \cup (X \setminus B)$  and vice versa. By Definition 3.4 and Axiom 3.5,  $x \in X \setminus (A \cap B) \implies x \in \{y \in X : y \notin A \cap B\} \implies (x \in X \text{ and } x \notin A \cap B)$ . By the inverse of Definition 3.3 (which, again, is a valid assertion since  $x \in A \cap B \iff ((x \in A) \wedge (x \in B))$ ),  $x \notin A \cap B \implies (x \notin A \text{ or } x \notin B)$ . We divide into two cases. Suppose  $x \notin A$ . Then by Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4,  $(x \in X \text{ and } x \notin A) \implies x \in \{y \in X : y \notin A\} \implies x \in X \setminus A$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in (X \setminus A) \cup (X \setminus B)$ . Now suppose  $x \notin B$ . Then by Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4,  $(x \in X \text{ and } x \notin B) \implies x \in \{y \in X : y \notin B\} \implies x \in X \setminus B$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in (X \setminus A) \cup (X \setminus B)$ .  $\square$

- 7/17: 7. Let  $A, B, C$  be sets. Show that  $A \cap B \subseteq A$  and  $A \cap B \subseteq B$ . Furthermore, show that  $C \subseteq A$  and  $C \subseteq B$  iff  $C \subseteq A \cap B$ . In a similar spirit, show that  $A \subseteq A \cup B$  and  $B \subseteq A \cup B$ , and furthermore that  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq C$  iff  $A \cup B \subseteq C$ .

*Proof.* To prove that  $A \cap B \subseteq A$  and  $A \cap B \subseteq B$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $A \cap B$  is an element of  $A$  and  $B$ . By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap B \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B)$ .

- 7/19: To prove that  $C \subseteq A$  and  $C \subseteq B$  iff  $C \subseteq A \cap B$ , it will suffice to show that  $C \subseteq A$  and  $C \subseteq B$  imply  $C \subseteq A \cap B$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $C \subseteq A$  and  $C \subseteq B$ . Then by two applications of Definition 3.2,  $x \in C \implies x \in A$  and  $x \in C \implies x \in B$ . By Definition 3.3,  $(x \in A \text{ and } x \in B) \implies x \in A \cap B$ . Thus, every element  $x$  of  $C$  is an element of  $A \cap B$ , so by Definition 3.2,  $C \subseteq A \cap B$ . Now suppose that  $C \subseteq A \cap B$ . Then by Definition 3.2,  $x \in C \implies x \in A \cap B$ . By Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap B \implies (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B)$ . Thus, every element  $x$  of  $C$  is an element of  $A$  and  $B$ , so by two applications of Definition 3.2,  $C \subseteq A$  and  $C \subseteq B$ .

To prove that  $A \subseteq A \cup B$  and that  $B \subseteq A \cup B$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A$  is an element of  $A \cup B$  and that every element  $y$  of  $B$  is an element of  $A \cup B$ , respectively. By two applications of Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A \implies x \in A \cup B$ , and  $y \in B \implies y \in A \cup B$ .

To prove that  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq C$  iff  $A \cup B \subseteq C$ , it will suffice to show that  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq C$  imply  $A \cup B \subseteq C$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq C$ . By Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A \cup B \implies (x \in A \text{ or } x \in B)$ . We divide into two cases. If  $x \in A$ , then Definition 3.2 ensures that  $x \in C$ . If  $x \in B$ , then Definition 3.2 similarly ensures that  $x \in C$ . Thus, either way,  $x \in A \cup B \implies x \in C$ , so by Definition 3.2,  $A \cup B \subseteq C$ . Now suppose that  $A \cup B \subseteq C$ . By Axiom 3.4 followed by Definition 3.2,  $x \in A \implies x \in A \cup B \implies x \in C$ . A similar argument shows that  $x \in B \implies x \in C$ . Thus,  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq C$ .  $\square$

8. Let  $A, B$  be sets. Prove the **absorption laws**  $A \cap (A \cup B) = A$  and  $A \cup (A \cap B) = A$ .

*Proof.* By Exercise 3.1.7,  $A \subseteq A \cup B$ . By Exercise 3.1.6b (with  $A = A$  and  $X = A \cup B$ ),  $A \cap (A \cup B) = A$ . By Exercise 3.1.7,  $A \cap B \subseteq A$ . By Exercise 3.1.6b (with  $A = A \cap B$  and  $X = A$ ),  $A \cup (A \cap B) = A$ .  $\square$

9. Let  $A, B, X$  be sets such that  $A \cup B = X$  and  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ . Show that  $A = X \setminus B$  and  $B = X \setminus A$ .

*Proof.* To prove  $A = X \setminus B$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A$  is an element of  $X \setminus B$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x \in A$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A \cup B$ . Since  $A \cup B = X$ , we have by Definition 3.1 that  $x \in X$ . Now suppose for the sake of contradiction



that  $x \in B$ . Since  $x \in A$  as well, by Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \cap B$ . But  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ , so by Definition 3.1,  $x \in \emptyset$ , which contradicts Axiom 3.2. Therefore,  $x \notin B$ . Since  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin B$ , by Definition 3.4,  $x \in X \setminus B$ . Now suppose that  $x \in X \setminus B$ . Then by Definition 3.4,  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin B$ . By Definition 3.1,  $x \in A \cup B$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ . Since  $x \notin B$ ,  $x$  must be an element of  $A$ . A similar argument shows that  $B = X \setminus A$ .  $\square$

- 7/22: 10. Let  $A$  and  $B$  be sets. Show that the three sets  $A \setminus B$ ,  $A \cap B$ , and  $B \setminus A$  are disjoint, and that their union is  $A \cup B$ .

*Proof.* To show that  $A \setminus B$ ,  $A \cap B$ , and  $B \setminus A$  are disjoint, we must show that

$$(A \setminus B) \cap (A \cap B) = (A \setminus B) \cap (B \setminus A) = (A \cap B) \cap (B \setminus A) = \emptyset$$

We may do this by showing that no object  $x$  is an element of any of the left three sets above (because of the uniqueness of the empty set). We do this via three contradiction proofs, as follows.

Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \in (A \setminus B) \cap (A \cap B)$ . Then by Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \setminus B$  and  $x \in A \cap B$ . Since  $x \in A \setminus B$ , Definition 3.4 tells us that  $x \notin B$  (and  $x \in A$ ). But since  $x \in A \cap B$ , Definition 3.3 tells us that  $x \in B$  (and  $x \in A$ ), a contradiction.

A similar argument to the above can handle  $(A \cap B) \cap (B \setminus A)$ .

Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \in (A \setminus B) \cap (B \setminus A)$ . Then by Definition 3.3,  $x \in A \setminus B$  and  $x \in B \setminus A$ . By the first statement,  $x \in A$  and  $x \notin B$ , while by the second statement,  $x \in B$  and  $x \notin A$ , two contradictions.

We now turn our attention to proving the following.

$$A \cup B = (A \setminus B) \cup (A \cap B) \cup (B \setminus A)$$

We can actually prove this solely on the basis of prior results (and one additional lemma).

**Lemma 3.6.** *Let  $A$  and  $B$  be sets. Show that  $(A \cup B) \setminus A = B \setminus A$ .*

*Proof.* To prove  $(A \cup B) \setminus A = B \setminus A$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $(A \cup B) \setminus A$  is an element of  $B \setminus A$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x \in (A \cup B) \setminus A$ . Then by Definition 3.4,  $x \in A \cup B$  and  $x \notin A$ . Since  $x \in A \cup B$ , by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ . But  $x \notin A$ , so  $x$  must be an element of  $B$ . Having established that  $x \in B$  and  $x \notin A$ , Definition 3.4 tells us that  $x \in B \setminus A$ . Now suppose that  $x \in B \setminus A$ . Then by Definition 3.4,  $x \in B$  and  $x \notin A$ . Since  $x \in B$ , by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A \cup B$ . Consequently, by Definition 3.4,  $x \in (A \cup B) \setminus A$ .  $\square$

Now we can begin. By Exercise 3.1.7,  $A \cap B \subseteq A$  and  $A \subseteq A \cup B$ . This implies by Proposition 3.1 that  $A \cap B \subseteq A \cup B$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} A \cup B &= (A \cap B) \cup ((A \cup B) \setminus (A \cap B)) && \text{Exercise 3.1.6g} \\ &= (A \cap B) \cup ((A \cup B) \setminus A) \cup ((A \cup B) \setminus B) && \text{Exercise 3.1.6h} \\ &= (A \cap B) \cup (B \setminus A) \cup (A \setminus B) && \text{Lemma 3.6} \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

11. Show that the axiom of replacement implies the axiom of specification.

*Proof.* Let  $P(x, y)$  be the statement “ $y = x$  and  $P(y)$  is true.” Then by Axiom 3.6, there exists a set

$$\begin{aligned} \{y : P(x, y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\} &= \{y : y = x \text{ and } P(y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\} \\ &= \{y : y \in A \text{ and } P(y) \text{ is true}\} \\ &= \{y \in A : P(y) \text{ is true}\} \end{aligned}$$

Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned}
 z \in \{y \in A : P(y) \text{ is true}\} &\implies z \in \{y : P(x, y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\} \\
 &\implies P(x, z) \text{ is true for some } x \in A \\
 &\implies z = x \text{ and } P(z) \text{ is true for some } x \in A \\
 &\implies z \in A \text{ and } P(z) \text{ is true}
 \end{aligned}$$

The above logic also works in reverse. Thus, all the tenets of Axiom 3.5 have been shown to follow from Axiom 3.6 (proof modified from Jiang, 2020).  $\square$

## 3.2 Russell's Paradox

- Suppose that we could unify the multitude of axioms in Section 3.1 into a single axiom. The following would be a good candidate (in fact, it implies the majority of the Section 3.1 axioms — see Exercise 3.2.1).

**Axiom 3.8** (Universal specification). (*Dangerous!*) Suppose for every object  $x$  we have a property  $P(x)$  pertaining to  $x$  (so that for every  $x$ ,  $P(x)$  is either a true statement or a false statement). Then there exists a set  $\{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  such that for every object  $y$ ,

$$y \in \{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\} \iff P(y) \text{ is true}$$

- Also known as **axiom of comprehension**.
- Basically, Axiom 3.8 asserts that “every property corresponds to a set” (Tao, 2016, p. 46).
- Unfortunately, Axiom 3.8 cannot be introduced into set theory because it creates a logical contradiction known as **Russell's paradox**.

– Discovered by philosopher and logician Bertrand Russell (1872-1970) in 1901.

- **Russell's paradox:** “Let  $P(x)$  be the statement... “ $x$  is a set, and  $x \notin x$ ”; i.e.,  $P(x)$  is true only when  $x$  is a set which does not contain itself. For instance,  $P(\{2, 3, 4\})$  is true, since the set  $\{2, 3, 4\}$  is not one of the three elements 2, 3, 4 of  $\{2, 3, 4\}$ . On the other hand, if we let  $S$  be the set of all sets (which we would know to exist from the axiom of universal specification), then since  $S$  is itself a set, it is an element of  $S$ , and so  $P(S)$  is false. Now use the axiom of universal specification to create the set

$$\Omega := \{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\} = \{x : x \text{ is a set and } x \notin x\}$$

i.e., the set of all sets which do not contain themselves. Now ask the question: does  $\Omega$  contain itself, i.e. is  $\Omega \in \Omega$ ? If  $\Omega$  did contain itself, then by definition this means that  $P(\Omega)$  is true, i.e.,  $\Omega$  is a set and  $\Omega \notin \Omega$ . On the other hand, if  $\Omega$  did not contain itself, then  $P(\Omega)$  would be true, and hence  $\Omega \in \Omega$ . Thus in either case we have both  $\Omega \in \Omega$  and  $\Omega \notin \Omega$ , which is absurd” (Tao, 2016, pp. 46–47).

- To clarify the last point: Is  $\Omega \in \Omega$ ? Suppose  $\Omega \in \Omega$ . Then since  $\Omega$  contains only sets for which  $P(x)$  is true,  $P(\Omega)$  must be true. But this implies, by the definition of  $P(x)$ , that  $\Omega \notin \Omega$ . Similarly, suppose  $\Omega \notin \Omega$ . Then since “ $\Omega$  is a set and  $\Omega \notin \Omega$ ” is a true statement,  $P(\Omega)$  must be true. But this implies, since  $\Omega$  contains all sets for which  $P(x)$  is true, that  $\Omega \in \Omega$ . In either case, we have both  $\Omega \in \Omega$  and  $\Omega \notin \Omega$  (contradictions).

7/23:

- The main problem highlighted by Russell's paradox is that Axiom 3.8 allows for the creation of sets that are too “large,” i.e., sets that contain themselves, which is somewhat silly.
  - This problem can be informally resolved by creating a hierarchy: primitive objects are below primitive sets (which only contain primitive objects), are below second-level sets (which only contain primitive objects and primitive sets), and so on and so forth. Formalizing this notion is complicated and will not be explored further here.

- Note that in pure set theory, there are no primitive objects — only one primitive set (the empty set).
- To avoid the complications of Russell’s paradox, we create a new axiom.  
**Axiom 3.9** (Regularity). *If  $A$  is a non-empty set, then there is at least one element  $x$  of  $A$  which is either not a set or is disjoint from  $A$ .*
- Also known as **axiom of foundation**.
- Axiom 3.9 asserts that “at least one of the elements of  $A$  is so low on the hierarchy of objects that it does not contain any of the other elements of  $A$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 48). It also asserts that sets may not contain themselves (see Exercise 3.2.2).
- As a less intuitive axiom, one might question whether or not Axiom 3.9 is needed. In fact, it is not necessary for the purposes of doing analysis, as all sets considered in analysis are very low on the hierarchy. However, it is necessary to perform more advanced set theory, so Tao, 2016 included it for the sake of completeness.

## Exercises

- 7/22: 1. Show that the universal specification axiom, Axiom 3.8, if assumed to be true, would imply Axioms 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, and 3.6. (If we assume that all natural numbers are objects, we also obtain Axiom 3.7.) Thus, this axiom, if permitted, would simplify the foundations of set theory tremendously (and can be viewed as one basis for an intuitive model of set theory known as “naive set theory”). Unfortunately, as we have seen, Axiom 3.8 is “too good to be true!”

*Proof.* Axiom 3.2: Let  $P(x)$  be a false statement for all objects  $x$ . By Axiom 3.8, there exists a set  $\{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$ , which contains no elements. (Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $y \in \{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  for some object  $y$ . Then  $P(y)$  is true. But  $P(y)$  is false by definition, a contradiction. Therefore,  $y \notin \{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  for all objects  $y$ .) Incidentally, that contradiction proof solidifies the symbolic statement of Axiom 3.2. Lastly, this set may be denoted  $\emptyset$  or  $\{\}$ .

Axiom 3.3: Let  $P(x)$  be the statement  $x = a$ . By Axiom 3.8, there exists a set  $\{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\} = \{x : x = a\} = \{a\}$  whose element is  $a$ . For every object  $y$ , we have  $y \in \{a\}$  iff  $P(y)$  is true, i.e., iff  $y = a$ . This set may be called the **singleton set** whose element is  $a$ . Now let  $P(x)$  be the statement “ $x = a$  or  $x = b$ .” By Axiom 3.8, there exists a set  $\{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\} = \{x : x = a \text{ or } x = b\} = \{a, b\}$  whose elements are  $a$  and  $b$ . For every object  $y$ , we have  $y \in \{a, b\}$  iff  $P(y)$  is true, i.e., iff  $y = a$  or  $y = b$ . This set may be called the **pair set** formed by  $a$  and  $b$ .

Axiom 3.4: Let  $A, B$  be sets. Let  $P(x)$  be the statement “ $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ .” By Axiom 3.8, there exists a set  $\{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\} = \{x : x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$ . This set may be called the **union**  $A \cup B$  of  $A$  and  $B$ . By Axiom 3.8,  $y \in A \cup B$  iff  $P(y)$  is true, i.e., iff  $y \in A$  or  $y \in B$ . Thus,  $A \cup B$  is clearly a set whose elements consist of all the elements which belong to  $A$  or  $B$  or both.

Axiom 3.6: Let  $A$  be a set. Let  $P(y)$  be the statement “ $P(x, y)$  is true for some  $x \in A$ ,” where  $P(x, y)$  is a statement pertaining to  $x$  and  $y$  such that for each  $x \in A$ , there is at most one  $y$  for which  $P(x, y)$  is true. By Axiom 3.8, there exists a set  $\{y : P(y) \text{ is true}\} = \{y : P(x, y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\}$ . By Axiom 3.8,  $z \in \{y : P(x, y) \text{ is true for some } x \in A\}$  iff  $P(z)$  is true, i.e., iff  $P(x, z)$  is true for some  $x \in A$ .

Axiom 3.5: Implied by the axiom of replacement (see Exercise 3.1.11). □

- 7/23: 2. Use the axiom of regularity (and the singleton set axiom) to show that if  $A$  is a set, then  $A \notin A$ . Furthermore, show that if  $A$  and  $B$  are two sets, then either  $A \notin B$  or  $B \notin A$  (or both).

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $A$  is a set and  $A \in A$ . By Axioms 3.1 and 3.3,  $A \in \{A\}$ . Since  $A \in A$  and  $A \in \{A\}$ , Definition 3.3 tells us that  $A \in A \cap \{A\}$ . Since there exists an

object  $x$  (namely  $A$ ) such that  $x \in A \cap \{A\}$ , by Axiom 3.2 and Definition 3.1,  $A \cap \{A\} \neq \emptyset$ . Thus, we have  $A$  is a set and  $A \cap \{A\} \neq \emptyset$ . But by Axiom 3.9, as the only element of  $\{A\}$ ,  $A$  must either not be a set or satisfy  $A \cap \{A\} = \emptyset$ , a contradiction. Therefore,  $A$  is not a set or  $A \notin A$ . Thus, if  $A$  is a set, then  $A \notin A$ .

Suppose for the sake of contradiction that for two sets  $A, B$ ,  $A \in B$  and  $B \in A$ . By Axioms 3.1 and 3.3, there exists a set  $\{A, B\}$  whose only elements are  $A$  and  $B$ . Since  $A \in B$  and  $A \in \{A, B\}$ , Definition 3.3, tells us that  $A \in B \cap \{A, B\}$ . Since there exists an object  $x$  (namely  $A$ ) such that  $x \in B \cap \{A, B\}$ , by Axiom 3.2 and Definition 3.1,  $B \cap \{A, B\} \neq \emptyset$ . By a similar argument,  $A \cap \{A, B\} \neq \emptyset$ . Thus, we have  $A, B$  are sets,  $B \cap \{A, B\} \neq \emptyset$ , and  $A \cap \{A, B\} \neq \emptyset$ . But by Axiom 3.9, an element  $x$  of  $\{A, B\}$  (namely  $A$  or  $B$ ) must either not be a set or satisfy  $x \cap \{A, B\} = \emptyset$ , a contradiction. Therefore,  $A \notin B$  or  $B \notin A$ .  $\square$

3. Show (assuming the other axioms of set theory) that the universal specification axiom, Axiom 3.8, is equivalent to an axiom postulating the existence of a “universal set”  $\Omega$  consisting of all objects (i.e., for all objects  $x$ , we have  $x \in \Omega$ ). In other words, if Axiom 3.8 is true, then a universal set exists, and conversely, if a universal set exists, then Axiom 3.8 is true. (This may explain why Axiom 3.8 is called the axiom of *universal* specification). Note that if a universal set  $\Omega$  existed, then we would have  $\Omega \in \Omega$  by Axiom 3.1, contradicting Exercise 3.2.2. Thus, the axiom of foundation specifically rules out the axiom of universal specification.

*Proof.* Suppose Axiom 3.8 is true. Let  $P(x)$  be a true statement for all objects  $x$ . Then there exists a set  $\Omega := \{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$ , and we have  $y \in \Omega$  iff  $P(y)$  is true, i.e., iff  $y$  is an object, i.e., for all objects  $y$ . Therefore, a universal set exists. Now suppose that a universal set  $\Omega$  exists. By Axiom 3.5, there exists a set  $\{x \in \Omega : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  for some property  $P(x)$  pertaining to  $x$  (note that this implies that  $P(x)$  pertains to all  $x$ ) and  $y \in \{x \in \Omega : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  iff  $y \in \Omega$  and  $P(y)$  is true. Since  $x \in \Omega$  and  $y \in \Omega$  are, by the definition of  $\Omega$ , always true, we have  $y \in \{x : P(x) \text{ is true}\}$  iff  $P(y)$  is true. Therefore, Axiom 3.8 is true.  $\square$

### 3.3 Functions

- For analysis, we need not just the notion of a set but the notion of a function from one set to another.

**Definition 3.5** (Functions). Let  $X, Y$  be sets, and let  $P(x, y)$  be a property pertaining to an object  $x \in X$  and an object  $y \in Y$ , such that for every  $x \in X$ , there is exactly one  $y \in Y$  for which  $P(x, y)$  is true (this is sometimes known as the **vertical line test**). Then we define the **function**  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  defined by  $P$  on the **domain**  $X$  and **range**  $Y$  to be the object which, given any **input**  $x \in X$ , assigns an output  $f(x) \in Y$ , defined to be the unique object  $f(x)$  for which  $P(x, f(x))$  is true. Thus, for any  $x \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ ,

$$y = f(x) \iff P(x, y) \text{ is true}$$

- Also known as **maps**, **transformations**, and **morphisms**.
  - Note, however, that a morphism “refers to a more general class of object, which may or may not correspond to actual functions, depending on the context” (Tao, 2016, p. 49).
- Functions obey the axiom of substitution.
  - Note that equal inputs imply equal outputs, but unequal inputs do not necessarily ensure unequal outputs.
- It can be proven that this notion of equality is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive (see Exercise 3.3.1).
- We can now formally define the increment function: Let  $X = \mathbb{N}$ ,  $Y = \mathbb{N}$ , and  $P(x, y)$  be the property that  $y = x++$ . By Axiom 2.4, for each  $x \in \mathbb{N}$ , there is exactly one  $y$  for which  $P(x, y)$  is true. Thus, we can define the increment function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  so that  $f(x) = x++$  for all  $x$ . While we cannot define a *decrement* function  $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  ( $0 \neq n++$  for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  by Axiom 2.3), we can define a decrement function  $g : \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  (by Lemma 2.4).

- Informally: Note that while we cannot define a square root function  $\sqrt{\cdot} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , we can define the square root function  $\sqrt{\cdot} : [0, +\infty) \rightarrow [0, +\infty)$ .
- Functions can be defined **explicitly** or **implicitly**.
  - Explicit definitions: Specify the domain, range, and how one generates the output  $f(x)$  from each input.
    - For example, the increment function  $f$  could be defined explicitly by saying that the domain and range of  $f$  are equal to  $\mathbb{N}$ , and  $f(x) := x++$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{N}$ .
  - Implicit definitions: Specify what property  $P(x, y)$  links the input  $x$  with the output  $f(x)$ .
    - For example, the square root function  $\sqrt{\cdot}$  was defined implicitly by the relation  $(\sqrt{x})^2 = x$ .
    - Note that implicit definitions are only valid if we know that for every input, there is only one output that obeys the implicit relation.
- Often the domain and range are not specified for the sake of brevity.
  - For example, we could refer to the increment function  $f$  as “the function  $f(x) := x++$ ,” “the function  $x \mapsto x++$ ,” “the function  $x++$ ,” or the extremely abbreviated “++.”
  - Note, however, that too much abbreviation can be dangerous, omitting valuable or even necessary information.
- Note that while we now use parentheses to clarify the order of operations and enclose the arguments of functions and properties, the usages should be unambiguous from context.
  - For example, if  $a$  is a number, then  $a(b+c)$  denotes  $a \times (b+c)$ , but if  $a$  is a function, then  $a(b+c)$  denotes the output of  $a$  when the input is  $b+c$ .
  - Note that argument are sometimes subscripted — “a sequence of natural numbers  $a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots$  is, strictly speaking, a function from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{N}$ , but is denoted by  $n \mapsto a_n$  rather than  $n \mapsto a(n)$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 51).
- Note that functions are not sets and sets are not functions (no  $x \in f$  and  $A : X \rightarrow Y$ ), but we can start with a function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and construct its **graph**  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$ , which describes the function completely (see Section 3.5 for more).
- We now define equality for functions.
 

**Definition 3.6** (Equality of functions). Two functions  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : X \rightarrow Y$  with the same domain and range are said to be equal,  $f = g$ , if and only if  $f(x) = g(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . (If  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  agree for some values of  $x$ , but not others, then we do not consider  $f$  and  $g$  to be equal.)
- Note that functions can be equal over only a certain domain.
  - For example,  $x \mapsto x$  and  $x \mapsto |x|$  are equal if defined only on the positive real axis, and are not equal if defined on  $\mathbb{R}$ .
- **Empty function:** The function  $f : \emptyset \rightarrow X$ .
  - We need not specify what  $f$  does to any input (since there are none), and Definition 3.6 asserts that for each set  $X$ , there is only one function from  $\emptyset$  to  $X$ .
- A fundamental operation of functions is composition.

**Definition 3.7** (Composition). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  be two functions, such that the range of  $f$  is the same set as the domain of  $g$ . We then define the **composition**  $g \circ f : X \rightarrow Z$  of the two functions  $g$  and  $f$  to be the function defined explicitly by the formula

$$(g \circ f)(x) := g(f(x))$$

- It can be proven that composition obeys the axiom of substitution (see Exercise 3.3.1).
- Composition is not commutative, but it is associative.

**Lemma 3.7** (Composition is associative). *Let  $f : Z \rightarrow W$ ,  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , and  $h : X \rightarrow Y$  be functions. Then  $f \circ (g \circ h) = (f \circ g) \circ h$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $g \circ h$  is a function from  $X$  to  $Z$ ,  $f \circ (g \circ h)$  is a function from  $X$  to  $W$ . Similarly,  $f \circ g$  is a function from  $Y \rightarrow W$ , and hence  $(f \circ g) \circ h$  is a function from  $X \rightarrow W$ . Thus,  $f \circ (g \circ h)$  and  $(f \circ g) \circ h$  have the same domain and range. In order to check that they are equal, we see from Definition 3.6 that we have to verify that  $(f \circ (g \circ h))(x) = ((f \circ g) \circ h)(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . But by Definition 3.7, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f \circ (g \circ h))(x) &= f((g \circ h)(x)) \\ &= f(g(h(x))) \\ &= (f \circ g)(h(x)) \\ &= ((f \circ g) \circ h)(x) \end{aligned}$$

as desired. □

- 7/24: • We now define several special types of functions, beginning with the following.

**Definition 3.8** (One-to-one functions). A function  $f$  is **one-to-one** if different elements map to different elements:

$$x \neq x' \implies f(x) \neq f(x')$$

Equivalently, a function is one-to-one if

$$f(x) = f(x') \implies x = x'$$

- Also known as **injective** (function).
- Informally: Note that while the function  $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  defined by  $f(n) := n^2$  is not one-to-one, the function  $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  defined by  $g(n) := n^2$  is one-to-one. Thus, being one-to-one can depend not just on the relation, but on the domain.
- **Two-to-one** (function): A function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  such that one can find distinct  $x$  and  $x'$  in the domain  $X$  such that  $f(x) = f(x')$ .
- Another special type is given by the following.

**Definition 3.9** (Onto functions). A function  $f$  is **onto** if  $f(X) = Y$ , i.e., every element in  $Y$  comes from applying  $f$  to some element in  $X$ :

$$\text{For every } y \in Y, \text{ there exists } x \in X \text{ such that } f(x) = y$$

- Also known as **surjective** (function).
- Informally: Note that while the function  $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  defined by  $f(n) := n^2$  is not onto, if we define the set  $A := \{n^2 : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ , then the function  $g : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow A$  defined by  $f(n) = n^2$  is onto. Thus, being onto can depend not just on the relation, but on the range.
- Injectivity and surjectivity are rather dual to each other (see Exercises 3.3.2, 3.3.4, and 3.3.5).

- 7/28: • A third special type is given by the following.

**Definition 3.10** (Bijective functions). A function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is **bijective** if it is both one-to-one and onto:

$$\text{For every } y \in Y, \text{ there is exactly one } x \text{ such that } f(x) = y.$$

- Also known as **invertible** (function), **perfect matching**, **one-to-one correspondence**<sup>[3]</sup>.
  - Instead of being denoted  $x \mapsto f(x)$ , we sometimes use  $x \leftrightarrow f(x)$ .
- Bijectivity of functions:
  - $f : \{0, 1, 2\} \rightarrow \{3, 4\}$  defined by  $f(0) := 3$ ,  $f(1) := 3$ , and  $f(2) := 4$  is not bijective (fails injectivity).
  - $f : \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \{2, 3, 4\}$  defined by  $f(0) := 2$  and  $f(1) := 3$  is not bijective (fails surjectivity).
  - $f : \{0, 1, 2\} \rightarrow \{3, 4, 5\}$  defined by  $f(0) := 3$ ,  $f(1) := 4$ , and  $f(2) := 5$  is bijective.
  - $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  defined by  $f(n) := n++$  is not bijective (fails surjectivity).
  - $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$  defined by  $f(n) := n++$  is bijective.
  - Bijectivity depends on the domain and range, not just the relation.
- **Inverse** (of a function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ): The function  $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$  associated with the property  $P(y, x)$  defined by  $f(x) = y$ , i.e., we let  $f^{-1}(y)$  be the entity  $x$  satisfying  $f(x) = y$ .

## Exercises

- 7/23: 1. Show that the definition of equality in Definition 3.6 is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive<sup>[4]</sup>. Also verify the substitution property: if  $f, \tilde{f} : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g, \tilde{g} : Y \rightarrow Z$  are functions such that  $f = \tilde{f}$  and  $g = \tilde{g}$ , then  $g \circ f = \tilde{g} \circ \tilde{f}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a function. For any object  $f(x) \in Y$ , we have  $f(x) = f(x)$  by the reflexive axiom of equality (see Section A.7). Thus, we have  $f(x) = f(x)$  for all  $f(x) \in Y$ , i.e., for all  $x \in X$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.6, we have  $f = f$ .

Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : X \rightarrow Y$  be functions, and let  $f = g$ . By Definition 3.6,  $f(x) = g(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Since equal objects are of the same type (i.e., follow the reflexive axiom of equality), we have  $g(x) = f(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.6, we have  $g = f$ .

Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $h : X \rightarrow Y$  be functions,  $f = g$ , and  $g = h$ . By Definition 3.6,  $f(x) = g(x)$  for all  $x \in X$  and  $g(x) = h(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Since equal objects are of the same type (i.e., follow the transitive axiom of equality), we have  $f(x) = h(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.6, we have  $f = h$ .

First, we see that both  $g \circ f$  and  $\tilde{g} \circ \tilde{f}$  are functions from  $X$  to  $Z$ , i.e., have the same domain and range. To show that  $g \circ f = \tilde{g} \circ \tilde{f}$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to verify that  $(g \circ f)(x) = (\tilde{g} \circ \tilde{f})(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . To begin, we see from Definition 3.6 that  $f(x) = \tilde{f}(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ , and that  $g(y) = \tilde{g}(y)$  for all  $y \in Y$ . Since  $f(x) \in Y$  for all  $f(x)$ , we have by Definition 3.7 that

$$\begin{aligned} (g \circ f)(x) &= g(f(x)) \\ &= \tilde{g}(f(x)) \\ &= \tilde{g}(\tilde{f}(x)) \\ &= (\tilde{g} \circ \tilde{f})(x) \end{aligned}$$

as desired. □

- 7/24: 2. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  be functions. Show that if  $f$  and  $g$  are both injective, then so is  $g \circ f$ ; similarly, show that if  $f$  and  $g$  are both surjective, then so is  $g \circ f$ .

<sup>3</sup>Not to be confused with the notion of a one-to-one function.

<sup>4</sup>Note that since Definition 3.6 should be an axiom (should axiomatize equality and all that entails for functions), this part of the exercise is silly (see Tao, 2020).

*Proof.* To prove that  $g \circ f$  is injective given the injectivity of  $f, g$ , Definition 3.8 tells us that we have to verify that  $x \neq x' \implies (g \circ f)(x) \neq (g \circ f)(x')$  for any distinct elements  $x, x'$  of  $X$ . By Definition 3.8, we have that if  $x$  and  $x'$  are two distinct elements of  $X$  (such that  $x \neq x'$ ), then  $f(x) \neq f(x')$ . By Definition 3.5, we know that  $f(x)$  and  $f(x')$  are both elements of  $Y$ . Thus, we have by Definition 3.8 that  $g(f(x)) \neq g(f(x'))$ . Therefore, we have by Definition 3.7 that

$$x \neq x' \implies f(x) \neq f(x') \implies g(f(x)) \neq g(f(x')) \implies (g \circ f)(x) \neq (g \circ f)(x')$$

as desired.

By Definition 3.7, we have  $g \circ f : X \rightarrow Z$ . Thus, to prove that  $g \circ f$  is surjective given the surjectivity of  $f, g$ , Definition 3.9 tells us that we have to verify that for every  $z \in Z$ , there exists  $x \in X$  such that  $(g \circ f)(x) = z$ . Let  $z$  be any element of  $Z$ . Then by Definition 3.9 and the surjectivity of  $g$ , we have  $g(y) = z$  for some  $y \in Y$ . Similarly, we have  $f(x) = y$  for that  $y$  and for some  $x \in X$ . Substituting, we have  $g(f(x)) = z$  for some  $x \in X$ . Since  $g(f(x)) = (g \circ f)(x)$  by Definition 3.7, we have that for any  $z \in Z$ , there exists  $x \in X$  such that  $(g \circ f)(x) = z$ .  $\square$

- 7/28: 3. When is the empty function injective? Surjective? Bijective?

*Proof.* The empty function is always injective: The statement “all distinct inputs map to distinct outputs” is vacuously true, since there exist no distinct inputs, or any inputs to speak of. The empty function is surjective iff its range is the empty set: In this case, the statement “for every  $y \in \emptyset$ , there exists  $x \in \emptyset$  such that  $f(x) = y$ ” is similarly vacuously true. Since a function is bijective iff it is both injective and surjective, we must take both take a sort of union of the two constraints above: We can conclude that the empty function is bijective iff “always and its range is the empty set” is true, i.e., iff its range is the empty set.  $\square$

- 7/24: 4. In this section, we give some cancellation laws for composition. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $\tilde{f} : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , and  $\tilde{g} : Y \rightarrow Z$  be functions. Show that if  $g \circ f = g \circ \tilde{f}$  and  $g$  is injective, then  $f = \tilde{f}$ . Is the same statement true if  $g$  is not injective? Show that if  $g \circ f = \tilde{g} \circ f$  and  $f$  is surjective, then  $g = \tilde{g}$ . Is the same statement true if  $f$  is not surjective?

*Proof.* To prove that  $f = \tilde{f}$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $f(x) = \tilde{f}(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . By Definition 3.6,  $g \circ f = g \circ \tilde{f}$  implies  $(g \circ f)(x) = (g \circ \tilde{f})(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Then by Definition 3.7,  $g(f(x)) = g(\tilde{f}(x))$  for all  $x \in X$ . Now by Definition 3.8 and the fact that  $g$  is injective, we know that  $g(y) = g(y') \implies y = y'$ . Therefore, since  $g(f(x)) = g(\tilde{f}(x))$  for all  $x \in X$ , we have  $f(x) = \tilde{f}(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Note that  $f$  is not necessarily equal to  $\tilde{f}$  if we drop the condition that  $g$  is injective (if  $g$  is not one-to-one, then we have  $g(y) = g(y')$  for some elements  $y$  and  $y'$  of  $Y$  such that  $y \neq y'$ . Thus, if  $f(x) \neq \tilde{f}(x)$ , we may still have  $g(f(x)) = g(\tilde{f}(x))$ ).

Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $g \neq \tilde{g}$ . Then by Definition 3.6, either  $g$  and  $\tilde{g}$  have a different domain or range, or  $g(y) \neq \tilde{g}(y)$  for some  $y \in Y$ . Since  $g$  and  $\tilde{g}$  have the same domain and range, we must have  $g(y) \neq \tilde{g}(y)$  for some  $y \in Y$ . Now since  $f$  is surjective, by Definition 3.9, for every  $y \in Y$ , there is some  $x \in X$  such that  $y = f(x)$ . Thus,  $g(f(x)) \neq \tilde{g}(f(x))$  for some  $x \in X$ . Consequently, by Definition 3.7,  $(g \circ f)(x) \neq (\tilde{g} \circ f)(x)$  for some  $x \in X$ . But this contradicts Definition 3.6, which, since  $g \circ f = \tilde{g} \circ f$ , implies that  $(g \circ f)(x) = (\tilde{g} \circ f)(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Note that  $g$  is not necessarily equal to  $\tilde{g}$  if we drop the condition that  $f$  is surjective (if  $f$  is not surjective, then, as we’ve only proven the assertion for all  $y = f(x)$ , we could have some  $y \in Y$  not associated with an  $f(x)$  for which  $g(y) \neq \tilde{g}(y)$ ).  $\square$

- 7/28: 5. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  be functions. Show that if  $g \circ f$  is injective, then  $f$  must be injective. Is it true that  $g$  must also be injective? Show that if  $g \circ f$  is surjective, then  $g$  must be surjective. Is it true that  $f$  must also be surjective?



*Proof.* By Definition 3.8, to prove that  $f$  is injective, it will suffice to show that for all  $x \neq x'$ ,  $f(x) \neq f(x')$ . Suppose for the sake of contradiction that for some  $x \neq x'$ ,  $f(x) = f(x')$ . Then by Definition 3.5, which guarantees that identical inputs map to a single output, we have  $g(f(x)) = g(f(x'))$ . Thus, by Definition 3.7, we have  $(g \circ f)(x) = (g \circ f)(x')$ . But by Definition 3.8, this means that  $g \circ f$  is not injective, a contradiction. Therefore, for all  $x \neq x'$ ,  $f(x) \neq f(x')$ . Note that  $g$  need not be injective to prove the above, as this condition was not needed for the above proof to be valid.

By Definition 3.9, to prove that  $g$  is surjective, we must verify that for every  $z \in Z$ , there exists  $y \in Y$  such that  $g(y) = z$ . Let  $z$  be any element of  $Z$ . Since we know that  $g \circ f$  is surjective, Definition 3.9 tells us that there exists an element  $x$  of  $X$  such that  $(g \circ f)(x) = z$ . By Definition 3.7, we have  $g(f(x)) = z$ . Now by Definition 3.5, we know that  $f(x) = y$  for some element  $y \in Y$ . Thus,  $g(y) = z$  for some  $y \in Y$ . Therefore, we have proven that for any (i.e., for every) element  $z \in Z$ , there exists  $y \in Y$  such that  $g(y) = z$ . Note that  $f$  need not be surjective to prove the above, as this condition was not needed for the above proof to be valid.  $\square$

6. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a bijective function, and let  $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$  be its inverse. Verify the cancellation laws  $f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$  for all  $x \in X$  and  $f(f^{-1}(y)) = y$  for all  $y \in Y$ . Conclude that  $f^{-1}$  is also invertible, and has  $f$  as its inverse (thus  $(f^{-1})^{-1} = f$ ).

*Proof.* Let  $y$  be any element of  $Y$ . We know that  $f^{-1}$  maps  $y$  to the element  $x \in X$  satisfying  $f(x) = y$  (the uniqueness of  $x$  being guaranteed by Definition 3.10). Thus, since  $y = f(x)$ ,  $f^{-1}$  maps  $f(x)$  to  $x$ , i.e.,  $f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$ . A similar argument can treat the other cancellation law.

To prove that  $f^{-1}$  is invertible, we must verify that for every  $x \in X$ , there is exactly one  $y$  such that  $f^{-1}(y) = x$ . Since we know that for every  $x \in X$ ,  $f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$ , and  $f(x) = y$  for some  $y \in Y$  (Definition 3.5), we know that for every  $x \in X$ ,  $f^{-1}(y) = x$  for some  $y \in Y$ . Now suppose for the sake of contradiction that there exist some  $y \neq y'$  such that  $f^{-1}(y) = x = f^{-1}(y')$ . Then  $f(x) = y$  and  $f(x) = y'$ , which contradicts Definition 3.5. Therefore, for every  $x \in X$ ,  $f^{-1}(y) = x$  for some and for not more than one  $y \in Y$ , i.e., for exactly one  $y \in Y$ .

The inverse of  $f^{-1}$  is, by definition, the function  $(f^{-1})^{-1} : X \rightarrow Y$  associated with the property  $P(x, y)$  defined by  $f^{-1}(y) = x$ . Clearly  $(f^{-1})^{-1}$  has the same domain and range as  $f$ . All that's left is to show that  $f(x) = (f^{-1})^{-1}(x)$ .  $f(x)$  is the element  $y \in Y$  such that  $f(x) = y$ , and  $(f^{-1})^{-1}(x)$  is the element  $y \in Y$  such that  $f^{-1}(y) = x$ , i.e.,  $f(x) = y$ . Since the functions are associated with the same property, they must be equal.  $\square$

7. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  be functions. Show that if  $f$  and  $g$  are bijective, then so is  $g \circ f$ , and we have  $(g \circ f)^{-1} = f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$ .

*Proof.* By Definition 3.10,  $f$  and  $g$  are both both injective and surjective. Thus, by consecutive applications of Exercise 3.3.2,  $g \circ f$  is both injective and surjective. Thus, by Definition 3.10 again,  $g \circ f$  is bijective.

To prove that  $(g \circ f)^{-1} = f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $(g \circ f)^{-1}$  and  $f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$  have the same domain and range, and  $(g \circ f)^{-1}(z) = (f^{-1} \circ g^{-1})(z)$  for all  $z \in Z$ . Since  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , by Definition 3.7, we have  $g \circ f : X \rightarrow Z$ . Thus, the inverse  $(g \circ f)^{-1} : Z \rightarrow X$ . Similarly, since  $g^{-1} : Z \rightarrow Y$  and  $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$ , by Definition 3.7,  $f^{-1} \circ g^{-1} : Z \rightarrow X$ . Thus,  $(g \circ f)^{-1}$  and  $f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$  have the same domain and range. As to the other part of the question, let  $(f^{-1} \circ g^{-1})(z) = x$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (f^{-1} \circ g^{-1})(z) = x &\implies f^{-1}(g^{-1}(z)) = x && \text{Definition 3.7} \\
 &\implies g^{-1}(z) = f(x) && \text{Definition of inverse} \\
 &\implies z = g(f(x)) && \text{Definition of inverse} \\
 &\implies z = (g \circ f)(x) && \text{Definition 3.7} \\
 &\implies (g \circ f)^{-1}(z) = x && \text{Definition of inverse}
 \end{aligned}$$

so by transitivity we have  $(g \circ f)^{-1}(z) = (f^{-1} \circ g^{-1})(z)$ , as desired.  $\square$

8. If  $X$  is a subset of  $Y$ , let  $\iota_{X \rightarrow Y} : X \rightarrow Y$  be the **inclusion map** (from  $X$  to  $Y$ ), defined by mapping  $x \mapsto x$  for all  $x \in X$ , i.e.,  $\iota_{X \rightarrow Y}(x) := x$  for all  $x \in X$ . The map  $\iota_{X \rightarrow X}$  is in particular called the **identity map** (on  $X$ ).

- (a) Show that if  $X \subseteq Y \subseteq Z$ , then  $\iota_{Y \rightarrow Z} \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow Y} = \iota_{X \rightarrow Z}$ .

*Proof.* By Definition 3.7,  $\iota_{Y \rightarrow Z} \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow Y} : X \rightarrow Z$ , so  $\iota_{Y \rightarrow Z} \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow Y}$  and  $\iota_{X \rightarrow Z}$  have the same domain and range. Now we must check that  $\iota_{Y \rightarrow Z} \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow Y}$  and  $\iota_{X \rightarrow Z}$  match the same inputs to the same outputs. Since  $X \subseteq Y \subseteq Z$ ,  $X \subseteq Z$  (Proposition 3.1), so  $\iota_{X \rightarrow Z}(x) = x$  for all  $x \in X$ . On the other hand,  $X \subseteq Y$  guarantees that  $\iota_{X \rightarrow Y}(x) = x$  for all  $x \in X$  and  $Y \subseteq Z$  guarantees that  $\iota_{Y \rightarrow Z}(y) = y$  for all  $y \in Y$ . Since  $x \in Y$  for all  $x \in X$  (Definition 3.2),

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{Y \rightarrow Z} \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow Y}(x) &= \iota_{Y \rightarrow Z}(\iota_{X \rightarrow Y}(x)) && \text{Definition 3.7} \\ &= \iota_{Y \rightarrow Z}(x) \\ &= x \end{aligned}$$

for all  $x \in X$ . Therefore,  $\iota_{Y \rightarrow Z} \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow Y} = \iota_{X \rightarrow Z}$ .  $\square$

- (b) Show that if  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is any function, then  $f = f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A} = \iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f$ .

*Proof.* We first prove that  $f = f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A}$ , and next prove that  $f = \iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f$ . Transitivity will guarantee that  $f = f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A} = \iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f$ .

To prove that  $f = f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A}$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $f$  and  $f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A}$  have the same domain and range, and that  $f(a) = (f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A})(a)$  for all  $a \in A$ . By Definition 3.7,  $f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A} : A \rightarrow B$ , so  $f$  and  $f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A}$  have the same domain and range. Now since  $A \subseteq A$ ,  $\iota_{A \rightarrow A}(a) = a$  for all  $a \in A$ . Thus, by Definition 3.7,  $(f \circ \iota_{A \rightarrow A})(a) = f(\iota_{A \rightarrow A}(a)) = f(a)$ .

To prove that  $f = \iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $f$  and  $\iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f$  have the same domain and range, and that  $f(a) = (\iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f)(a)$  for all  $a \in A$ . By Definition 3.7,  $\iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f : A \rightarrow B$ , so  $f$  and  $\iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f$  have the same domain and range. Now since  $B \subseteq B$ ,  $\iota_{B \rightarrow B}(b) = b$  for all  $b \in B$ . Since every  $f(a) \in B$ , by Definition 3.7,  $(\iota_{B \rightarrow B} \circ f)(a) = \iota_{B \rightarrow B}(f(a)) = f(a)$ .  $\square$

- (c) Show that if  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a bijective function, then  $f \circ f^{-1} = \iota_{B \rightarrow B}$ , and  $f^{-1} \circ f = \iota_{A \rightarrow A}$ .

*Proof.* By Exercise 3.3.6 (and Definition 3.7),  $(f \circ f^{-1})(b) = b$  for all  $b \in B$ . By definition,  $\iota_{B \rightarrow B}(b) = b$  for all  $b \in B$ . Therefore,  $f \circ f^{-1} = \iota_{B \rightarrow B}$ . A similar argument holds in the other case.  $\square$

- (d) Show that if  $X$  and  $Y$  are disjoint sets, and  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  are functions, then there is a unique function  $h : X \cup Y \rightarrow Z$  such that  $h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y} = f$  and  $h \circ \iota_{Y \rightarrow X \cup Y} = g$ .

*Proof.* Let  $h : X \cup Y \rightarrow Z$  be defined by the following (note that it is the fact that  $X$  and  $Y$  are disjoint that allows the following definition to make sense, i.e., not be contradictory for some inputs).

$$h(a) := \begin{cases} f(a) & a \in X \\ g(a) & a \in Y \end{cases}$$

To prove that  $h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y} = f$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y}$  and  $f$  have the same domain and range, and that  $(h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y})(a) = f(a)$  for all  $a \in X$ . By Definition 3.7,  $h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y} : X \rightarrow Z$ , so  $h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y}$  and  $f$  have the same domain and range. Now since  $X \subseteq X \cup Y$  (Exercise 3.1.7),  $\iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y}(a) = a$  for all  $a \in X$ . Thus, by Definition 3.7, for any  $a \in X$ ,  $(h \circ \iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y})(a) = h(\iota_{X \rightarrow X \cup Y}(a)) = h(a) = f(a)$ . A similar argument holds for the other case<sup>[5]</sup>.  $\square$

<sup>5</sup>How do I verify uniqueness, or do I not need to?

### 3.4 Images and Inverse Images

7/29:

- We now discuss what happens when we apply a function to a set, as opposed to individual, non-set objects.

**Definition 3.11** (Images of sets). If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a function from  $X$  to  $Y$ , and  $S$  is a set in  $X$  (or a subset of  $X$ ), we define  $f(S)$  to be the set

$$f(S) := \{f(x) : x \in S\}$$

This set is a subset of  $Y$ , and is sometimes called the **image** (of  $S$  under the map  $f$ ). We sometimes call  $f(S)$  the **forward image** (of  $S$ ) to distinguish it from the concept of the **inverse image**  $f^{-1}(S)$  (of  $S$ ), which is defined below.

Note that, symbolically,

$$x \in S \implies f(x) \in f(S)$$

and

$$y \in f(S) \iff y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in S$$

- Note that  $f(S)$  is well-defined, as Definition 3.11 is based in Axiom 3.6. Also note that Definition 3.11 could be defined in terms of Axiom 3.5.
- As alluded to above, we now define inverse images.

**Definition 3.12** (Inverse images). If  $U$  is a subset of  $Y$ , we define the set  $f^{-1}(U)$  to be the set

$$f^{-1}(U) := \{x \in X : f(x) \in U\}$$

In other words,  $f^{-1}(U)$  consists of all the elements of  $X$  which map into  $U$ :

$$f(x) \in U \iff x \in f^{-1}(U)$$

We call  $f^{-1}(U)$  the **inverse image** (of  $U$ ).

- Note that if  $f$  is bijective, then we have defined  $f^{-1}$  in two different ways. However, the definitions are equivalent (see Exercise 3.4.1).
- Since we wish to treat functions as objects so that we can create sets of functions, we axiomatize this notion.

**Axiom 3.10** (Power set axiom). *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be sets. Then there exists a set, denoted  $Y^X$ , which consists of all the functions from  $X$  to  $Y$ , thus*

$$f \in Y^X \iff f \text{ is a function with domain } X \text{ and range } Y$$

- “Let  $X = \{4, 7\}$  and  $Y = \{0, 1\}$ . Then the set  $Y^X$  consists of four functions: the function that maps  $4 \mapsto 0$  and  $7 \mapsto 0$ ; the function that maps  $4 \mapsto 0$  and  $7 \mapsto 1$ ; the function that maps  $4 \mapsto 1$  and  $7 \mapsto 0$ ; and the function that maps  $4 \mapsto 1$  and  $7 \mapsto 1$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 58).
- Note that we use the notation  $Y^X$  because if  $Y$  has  $n$  elements and  $X$  has  $m$  elements, then  $Y^X$  has  $n^m$  elements (see Exercise ??).
- See Exercise 3.4.6 for a consequence of Axiom 3.10.
- **Power set** (of  $X$ ): The set  $2^X = \{Y : Y \text{ is a subset of } X\}$ .
- Note that we use the notation  $2^X$  because if  $X$  has  $m$  elements, then  $2^X$  has  $2^m$  elements (see Chapter ??).
- For the sake of completeness, we enhance Axiom 3.4 with the following.

**Axiom 3.11** (Union). *Let  $A$  be a set, all of whose elements are themselves sets. Then there exists a set  $\bigcup A$  whose elements are precisely those objects which are elements of the elements of  $A$ . Thus, for all objects  $x$ ,*

$$x \in \bigcup A \iff x \in S \text{ for some } S \in A$$

- Note that Axioms 3.11 and 3.3 imply Axiom 3.4 (see Exercise 3.4.8).
- An important consequence of Axiom 3.11 is that “if one has some set  $I$ , and for every element  $\alpha \in I$  we have some set  $A_\alpha$ , then we can form the union set  $\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ <sup>[6]</sup> by defining

$$\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha := \bigcup \{A_\alpha : \alpha \in I\} \quad (3.1)$$

which is a set thanks to the axiom of replacement and the axiom of union” (Tao, 2016, p. 59).

- Note that for any object  $y$ ,

$$y \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha \iff y \in A_\alpha \text{ for some } \alpha \in I \quad (3.2)$$

- To explain the above, consider the following example.
  - If  $I = \{1, 2, 3\}$ ,  $A_1 := \{2, 3\}$ ,  $A_2 := \{3, 4\}$ , and  $A_3 := \{4, 5\}$ , then  $\bigcup_{\alpha \in \{1, 2, 3\}} A_\alpha = \{2, 3, 4, 5\}$ .
- There is some notation associated with this paradigm, defined as follows.
- **Index set:** The set  $I$ .
- **Labels:** The elements  $\alpha$  of the index set  $I$ .
- **Family of sets:** The group of sets  $A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$ .
  - Note that the family of sets is **indexed** by the labels  $\alpha \in I$ .
- Note that if  $I$  were empty, then  $\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  would also be empty.
- “Given any non-empty set  $I$ , and given an assignment of a set  $A_\alpha$  to each  $\alpha \in I$ , we can define the intersection  $\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  by first choosing some element  $\beta$  of  $I$  (which we can do since  $I$  is nonempty), and setting

$$\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha := \{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} \quad (3.3)$$

which is a set by the axiom of specification” (Tao, 2016, p. 60).

- Note that for any object  $y$ ,
- $$y \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha \iff y \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I \quad (3.4)$$
- Note that this definition does not depend on the choice of  $\beta$  (see Exercise 3.4.9).
  - Note that Axioms 3.1-3.11 (excluding Axiom 3.8) are known as the **Zermelo-Fraenkel axioms of set theory**, after Ernest Zermelo (1871-1953) and Abraham Fraenkel (1891-1965).
    - Note that “these axioms are formulated slightly differently in other texts, but all the formulations can be shown to be equivalent to each other” (Tao, 2016, p. 60).
    - Also note that there is one additional axiom (the **axiom of choice** — see Section ??), giving rise to the **Zermelo-Fraenkel-Choice (ZFC) axioms of set theory**, but we do not need this axiom at this moment.

---

<sup>6</sup>“the union of the family of sets  $A_\alpha$  indexed by the labels  $\alpha$  in the set  $I$ ”

## Exercises

1. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a bijective function, and let  $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$  be its inverse. Let  $V$  be any subset of  $Y$ . Prove that the forward image of  $V$  under  $f^{-1}$  is the same set as the inverse image of  $V$  under  $f$ ; thus, the fact that both sets are denoted by  $f^{-1}(V)$  will not lead to any inconsistency.

*Proof.* By Definition 3.11, the forward image of  $V$  under  $f^{-1}$  is the set  $\{f^{-1}(x) : x \in V\}$ . By Definition 3.12, the inverse image of  $V$  under  $f$  is the set  $\{x \in X : f(x) \in V\}$ . Now to prove that these sets are equal, by Definition 3.1, we must verify that every element  $y$  of  $\{f^{-1}(x) : x \in V\}$  is an element of  $\{x \in X : f(x) \in V\}$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $y$  is an arbitrary element of  $\{f^{-1}(x) : x \in V\}$ . By Definition 3.11, this implies that  $y = f^{-1}(x)$  for some  $x \in V$ . Thus, by the definition of the inverse (and the fact that  $f$  is bijective),  $f(y) = x$  for some  $x \in V$ , or, more simply,  $f(y) \in V$ . But by Definition 3.12,  $f(y) \in V \implies y \in \{x \in X : f(x) \in V\}$ . Using the above implications in reverse will suffice to prove that  $y \in \{x \in X : f(x) \in V\} \implies y \in \{f^{-1}(x) : x \in V\}$ .  $\square$

- 7/30: 2. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a function from one set  $X$  to another set  $Y$ , let  $S$  be a subset of  $X$ , and let  $U$  be a subset of  $Y$ . What, in general, can one say about  $f^{-1}(f(S))$  and  $S$ ? What about  $f(f^{-1}(U))$  and  $U$ ?

*Proof.* It is hard to generalize much from the rigid definitions, but we will give those and then prove one property. So first off,

$$\begin{aligned} f^{-1}(f(S)) &= \{x \in X : f(x) \in \{f(x') : x' \in S\}\} \\ f(f^{-1}(U)) &= \{f(x) : x \in \{x' \in X : f(x') \in U\}\} \end{aligned}$$

Now, we can actually prove that  $S \subseteq f^{-1}(f(S))$  and  $f(f^{-1}(U)) \subseteq U$ , which we will do as follows.

By Definition 3.2, to prove that  $S \subseteq f^{-1}(f(S))$ , we must verify that every element  $x \in S$  is an element of  $f^{-1}(f(S))$ . Suppose  $x$  is any element of  $S$ . To prove that  $x \in \{x' \in X : f(x') \in \{f(x'') : x'' \in S\}\}$ , Axiom 3.5 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $x \in X$  and “ $f(x) \in \{f(x') : x' \in S\}$ ” is a true statement. Since  $S \subseteq X$  and  $x \in S$ , we have by Definition 3.2 that  $x \in X$ . On the other hand, let  $y = f(x)$ . Then since  $x \in S$ , by Axiom 3.6,  $y \in \{y' : y' = f(x') \text{ for some } x' \in S\} \implies f(x) \in \{f(x') : x' \in S\}$ .

By Definition 3.2, to prove that  $f(f^{-1}(U)) \subseteq U$ , we must verify that every element  $y \in f(f^{-1}(U))$  is an element of  $U$ . Suppose  $y$  is any element of  $f(f^{-1}(U))$ . Then by the rigid definition of  $f(f^{-1}(U))$ , above, and Definition 3.1, we have  $y \in \{f(x) : x \in \{x' \in X : f(x') \in U\}\}$ . By Axiom 3.6, this means that  $y = f(x)$  for some  $x \in \{x' \in X : f(x') \in U\}$ . But by Axiom 3.5,  $x \in \{x' \in X : f(x') \in U\} \implies (x \in X \text{ and } f(x) \in U)$ . Thus, we know that  $y = f(x)$  for some  $f(x) \in U$ , so we have  $y \in U$ .  $\square$

3. Let  $A, B$  be two subsets of a set  $X$ , and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a function. Show that  $f(A \cap B) \subseteq f(A) \cap f(B)$ , that  $f(A) \setminus f(B) \subseteq f(A \setminus B)$ , and that  $f(A \cup B) = f(A) \cup f(B)$ . For the first two statements, is it true that the  $\subseteq$  relation can be improved to  $=$ ?

*Proof.* Because of the number of statements to prove and the logical simplicity of the implications involved, we will shorthand these proofs.

We begin by proving that  $f(A \cap B) \subseteq f(A) \cap f(B)$ , for which it will suffice (Definition 3.2) to show that every element  $y$  of  $f(A \cap B)$  is an element of  $f(A) \cap f(B)$ . To this end, let  $y$  be any element of  $f(A \cap B)$ . Since  $A \cap B \subseteq A$  (Exercise 3.1.7) and  $A \subseteq X$ ,  $A \cap B \subseteq X$  (Proposition 3.1). Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} y \in f(A \cap B) &\implies y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A \cap B && \text{Definition 3.11} \\ &\implies (y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A \text{ and } y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in B) && \text{Definition 3.3} \\ &\implies (y \in f(A) \text{ and } y \in f(B)) && \text{Definition 3.11} \\ &\implies y \in f(A) \cap f(B) && \text{Definition 3.3} \end{aligned}$$

To prove that  $f(A) \setminus f(B) \subseteq f(A \setminus B)$ , we must verify (Definition 3.2) that every element  $y$  of  $f(A) \setminus f(B)$  is an element of  $f(A \setminus B)$ , which can be done as follows. Note that  $A \setminus B \subseteq X$  since  $A \setminus B \subseteq A$  (Definition 3.4 and Axiom 3.5) and  $A \subseteq X$  (Proposition 3.1).

$$\begin{aligned}
 y \in f(A) \setminus f(B) &\implies y \in \{z \in f(A) : z \notin f(B)\} && \text{Definition 3.4} \\
 &\implies (y \in f(A) \text{ and } y \notin f(B)) && \text{Axiom 3.5} \\
 &\implies (y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A \text{ and } y = f(x) \text{ for no } x \in B) && \text{Definition 3.11} \\
 &\implies y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A \setminus B && \text{Definition 3.4} \\
 &\implies y \in f(A \setminus B) && \text{Definition 3.11}
 \end{aligned}$$

To prove that  $f(A \cup B) = f(A) \cup f(B)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $y \in f(A \cup B) \iff y \in f(A) \cup f(B)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 y \in f(A \cup B) &\iff y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A \cup B && \text{Definition 3.11} \\
 &\iff (y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in A \text{ or } y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in B) && \text{Axiom 3.4} \\
 &\iff (y \in f(A) \text{ or } y \in f(B)) && \text{Definition 3.11} \\
 &\iff y \in f(A) \cup f(B) && \text{Axiom 3.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

Because of the transitivity of logically equivalent statements (we may induct the result of Exercise A.1.5), we have shown what was desired.

As to the other part of the question, it is *not* true that the  $\subseteq$  relation can be improved to  $=$  for the first or the second statement, which we may verify thorough two counterexamples, as follows. For the first statement, let  $X = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $Y = \{3, 4\}$ ,  $A = \{1\}$ ,  $B = \{2\}$ , and  $f : \{1, 2\} \rightarrow \{3, 4\}$  be defined by  $f(x) := 3$ . Then we have  $f(A) \cap f(B) = \{3\}$ , but  $f(A \cap B) = \{\}$ . Thus,  $3 \in f(A) \cap f(B)$ , but  $3 \notin f(A \cap B)$ . Note that the breakdown in the would-be reverse proof of  $f(A \cap B) \subseteq f(A) \cap f(B)$  comes from the fact that although  $y \in f(A) \cap f(B) \implies y = f(x)$  for some  $x \in A$  and  $y = f(x')$  for some  $x' \in B$ , we cannot guarantee that  $x = x'$  (unless  $f$  is injective), i.e., that  $x \in A \cap B$ . As to the second statement, we consider the same function, except that we let  $A = \{1, 2\}$ . Thus, we have  $f(A \setminus B) = \{3\}$ , but  $f(A) \setminus f(B) = \{\}$ , implying that  $3 \in f(A \setminus B)$  but  $3 \notin f(A) \setminus f(B)$ . Note that the breakdown in the would-be reverse proof of  $f(A) \setminus f(B) \subseteq f(A \setminus B)$  comes from the fact that although  $y \in f(A \setminus B) \implies y = f(x)$  for some  $x \in A$ , we cannot guarantee that there exists no  $x' \in B$  such that  $y = f(x')$  (unless  $f$  is injective).  $\square$

4. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a function from one set  $X$  to another set  $Y$ , and let  $U, V$  be subsets of  $Y$ . Show that  $f^{-1}(U \cup V) = f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V)$ , that  $f^{-1}(U \cap V) = f^{-1}(U) \cap f^{-1}(V)$ , and that  $f^{-1}(U \setminus V) = f^{-1}(U) \setminus f^{-1}(V)$ .

*Proof.* For the same reasons as in Exercise 3.4.3, we shorthand these proofs.

To prove that  $f^{-1}(U \cup V) = f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $x \in f^{-1}(U \cup V) \iff x \in f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in f^{-1}(U \cup V) &\iff f(x) \in U \cup V && \text{Definition 3.12} \\
 &\iff (f(x) \in U \text{ or } f(x) \in V) && \text{Axiom 3.4} \\
 &\iff (x \in f^{-1}(U) \text{ or } x \in f^{-1}(V)) && \text{Definition 3.12} \\
 &\iff x \in f^{-1}(U) \cup f^{-1}(V) && \text{Axiom 3.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

To prove that  $f^{-1}(U \cap V) = f^{-1}(U) \cap f^{-1}(V)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $x \in f^{-1}(U \cap V) \iff x \in f^{-1}(U) \cap f^{-1}(V)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in f^{-1}(U \cap V) &\iff f(x) \in U \cap V && \text{Definition 3.12} \\
 &\iff (f(x) \in U \text{ and } f(x) \in V) && \text{Definition 3.3} \\
 &\iff (x \in f^{-1}(U) \text{ and } x \in f^{-1}(V)) && \text{Definition 3.12} \\
 &\iff x \in f^{-1}(U) \cap f^{-1}(V) && \text{Definition 3.3}
 \end{aligned}$$

To prove that  $f^{-1}(U \setminus V) = f^{-1}(U) \setminus f^{-1}(V)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $x \in f^{-1}(U \setminus V) \iff x \in f^{-1}(U) \setminus f^{-1}(V)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in f^{-1}(U \setminus V) &\iff f(x) \in U \setminus V && \text{Definition 3.12} \\
 &\iff f(x) \in \{y \in U : y \notin V\} && \text{Definition 3.4} \\
 &\iff (f(x) \in U \text{ and } f(x) \notin V) && \text{Axiom 3.5} \\
 &\iff (x \in f^{-1}(U) \text{ and } x \notin f^{-1}(V)) && \text{Definition 3.12} \\
 &\iff x \in \{f^{-1}(U) : x \notin f^{-1}(V)\} && \text{Axiom 3.5} \\
 &\iff x \in f^{-1}(U) \setminus f^{-1}(V) && \text{Definition 3.12}
 \end{aligned}$$

□

5. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a function from one set  $X$  to another set  $Y$ . Show that  $f(f^{-1}(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq Y$  if and only if  $f$  is surjective. Show that  $f^{-1}(f(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq X$  if and only if  $f$  is injective.

*Proof.* To show that  $f(f^{-1}(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq Y$  if and only if  $f$  is surjective, we must verify that the implication “if  $f(f^{-1}(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq Y$ , then  $f$  is surjective” and its converse are both true.

Suppose first that  $f(f^{-1}(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq Y$ . To show that  $f$  is surjective, Definition 3.9 tells us that it will suffice to show that for every  $y \in Y$ , there exists  $x \in X$  such that  $f(x) = y$ . Let  $y$  be any element of  $Y$ . Then by Axiom 3.3, there exists a set  $\{y\}$ . Since  $y \in Y$  and  $y$  is the only element of  $\{y\}$ , by Definition 3.2,  $\{y\} \subseteq Y$ . Thus,  $f(f^{-1}(\{y\})) = \{y\}$ . Since  $\{y\}$  is a nonempty set, we know that  $f^{-1}(\{y\})$  is a nonempty set (if  $f^{-1}(\{y\})$  were empty, then  $f(f^{-1}(\{y\})) = \{y\}$  would be empty, a contradiction). Thus, there exists some  $x \in f^{-1}(\{y\})$ . Since Definition 3.12 implies that  $x \in \{x' \in X : f(x') \in \{y\}\}$ , meaning by Axiom 3.5 that  $x \in X$  and  $f(x) \in \{y\}$ , and, thus, by Axiom 3.3 that  $f(x) = y$ , we have that there exists  $x \in X$  such that  $f(x) = y$ , as desired.

Now suppose that  $f$  is surjective. To show that  $f(f^{-1}(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq Y$ , we must verify that for any subset  $S$  of  $Y$ , every element  $y$  of  $f(f^{-1}(S))$  is an element of  $S$  and vice versa (Definition 3.1). Let  $S$  be an arbitrary subset of  $Y$ . By Exercise 3.4.2,  $f(f^{-1}(S)) \subseteq S$ . On the other hand, suppose that  $y$  is an arbitrary element of  $S$ . Since  $f$  is surjective, we have by Definition 3.9 that  $f(x) = y$  for some  $x \in X$ . Now consider this  $x$ : since  $y \in S$ , we know that  $f(x) \in S$ . Thus, by Definition 3.12,  $x \in f^{-1}(S)$ . Therefore, we have  $y = f(x)$  for some  $x \in f^{-1}(S)$ , which by Definition 3.11 and the fact that  $f^{-1}(S) \subseteq X$  (as implied by Definition 3.12 and Axiom 3.5) implies that  $y \in f(f^{-1}(S))$ .

To show that  $f^{-1}(f(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq X$  if and only if  $f$  is injective, we must verify that the implication “if  $f^{-1}(f(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq X$ , then  $f$  is injective” and its converse are both true.

Suppose first that  $f^{-1}(f(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq X$ . To show that  $f$  is injective, Definition 3.8 tells us that it will suffice to show that if  $x \neq x'$  for two elements  $x, x'$  of  $X$ , then  $f(x) \neq f(x')$ . Let  $x, x'$  be any two elements of  $X$  such that  $x \neq x'$ . By Axiom 3.3, the sets  $\{x\}$  and  $\{x'\}$  exist. Note that since  $x \in X$  and  $x$  is the only element of  $\{x\}$ , by Definition 3.2,  $\{x\} \subseteq X$ , and, similarly,  $\{x'\} \subseteq X$ . Since there exists an element of  $\{x\}$  (namely  $x$ ) that is not an element of  $\{x'\}$ , by Definition 3.1,  $\{x\} \neq \{x'\}$ . Thus, since  $f^{-1}(f(\{x\})) = \{x\}$  and  $f^{-1}(f(\{x'\})) = \{x'\}$ , we have  $f^{-1}(f(\{x\})) \neq f^{-1}(f(\{x'\}))$ . This implies that  $f(\{x\}) \neq f(\{x'\})$  (if  $f(\{x\})$  were equal to  $f(\{x'\})$ , then  $f^{-1}(f(\{x\}))$  would be equal to  $f^{-1}(f(\{x'\}))$ , a contradiction). Since  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x'') : x'' \in \{x\}\} = \{f(x)\}$ , and, similarly,  $f(\{x'\}) = \{f(x')\}$ , we have  $\{f(x)\} \neq \{f(x')\}$ . Therefore,  $f(x) \neq f(x')$  (if  $f(x) = f(x')$ , then, as singleton sets (Axiom 3.3), every element of  $\{f(x)\}$  would be an element of  $\{f(x')\}$ , and vice versa, proving their equality by Definition 3.1, a contradiction).

Now suppose that  $f$  is injective. To show that  $f^{-1}(f(S)) = S$  for every  $S \subseteq X$ , we must verify that for any subset  $S$  of  $X$ , every element  $x$  of  $f^{-1}(f(S))$  is an element of  $S$  and vice versa (Definition 3.1). Let  $S$  be an arbitrary subset of  $X$ , and suppose that  $x$  is an arbitrary element of  $f^{-1}(f(S))$ . First off,  $f(S) \subseteq Y$ . (We must show that every  $y \in f(S)$  is an element of  $Y$  (Definition 3.2). If  $y \in f(S)$ ,

then we know that  $y = f(x)$  for some  $x \in S$  by Definition 3.11. Since  $S \subseteq X$ , we have that  $y = f(x)$  for some  $x \in X$ , which, since  $f(x) \in Y$ , implies that  $y \in Y$ . Thus, by Definition 3.12,  $f(x) \in f(S)$ . By Definition 3.11 and the fact that  $f$  is injective, this implies that  $x \in S$  (if  $f$  were not injective, then it would be possible that  $x \notin S$  but  $f(x) \in f(S)$ , since there could exist some  $x' \in S$  such that  $f(x') = f(x)$ ). On the other hand, by Exercise 3.4.2,  $S \subseteq f^{-1}(f(S))$ .  $\square$

- 7/29: 6. Prove the following lemma. (Hint: start with the set  $\{0,1\}^X$  and apply the replacement axiom, replacing each function  $f$  with the object  $f^{-1}(\{1\})$ .) See also Exercise 3.5.11.

**Lemma 3.8.** *Let  $X$  be a set. Then the set*

$$\{Y : Y \text{ is a subset of } X\}$$

*is a set.*

*Proof.* We first define a set composed entirely of subsets of  $X$ . We then guarantee that this set includes all subsets of  $X$ .

Consider the set  $\{0,1\}^X$ . For any  $f \in \{0,1\}^X$ , since  $\{1\} \subseteq \{0,1\}$  (i.e., is a subset of the range of  $f$ ), Definition 3.12 allows us to define the (unique) set  $f^{-1}(\{1\})$ . Now let  $P(f, A)$  be the property  $A = f^{-1}(\{1\})$ . Then for every element  $f \in \{0,1\}^X$ , there is exactly, i.e., at most one  $A$  for which  $P(f, A)$  is true. Consequently, by Axiom 3.6, there exists a set  $\{A : P(f, A) \text{ is true for some } f \in \{0,1\}^X\}$ , or, more briefly,  $\{f^{-1}(\{1\}) : f \in \{0,1\}^X\}$ . Now by Definition 3.12, each  $f^{-1}(\{1\})$  represents the corresponding set  $\{x \in X : f(x) \in \{1\}\}$ . This implies by Axiom 3.5 that every  $f^{-1}(\{1\})$  is a subset of  $X$ . Thus,  $\{f^{-1}(\{1\}) : f \in \{0,1\}^X\}$  is a set composed entirely of subsets of  $X$ .

At this point, all that's left is to guarantee that  $\{f^{-1}(\{1\}) : f \in \{0,1\}^X\}$  includes *all* subsets of  $X$ , which may be done as follows. Let  $Z$  be any subset of  $X$ . Then we may define the function  $f : X \rightarrow \{0,1\}$  by the following.

$$f(x) := \begin{cases} 1 & x \in Z \\ 0 & x \notin Z \end{cases}$$

By Axiom 3.10,  $f \in \{0,1\}^X$ . Thus, by the first part of this proof, we know that  $f^{-1}(\{1\})$  exists and is defined to be equal to  $\{x \in X : f(x) \in \{1\}\}$ . But Axiom 3.3,  $f(x) \in \{1\}$  iff  $f(x) = 1$ , and by the definition of  $f$ ,  $f(x) = 1$  iff  $x \in Z$ . Thus,  $f^{-1}(\{1\}) = \{x \in X : x \in Z\} = Z$ . Since  $f^{-1}(\{1\}) \in \{f^{-1}(\{1\}) : f \in \{0,1\}^X\}$ , we have  $Z \in \{f^{-1}(\{1\}) : f \in \{0,1\}^X\}$ . Therefore, there exists a set that contains exactly the subsets of  $X$ , which we may denote by  $\{Y : Y \text{ is a subset of } X\}$ .  $\square$

- 7/31: 7. Let  $X, Y$  be sets. Define a **partial function** from  $X$  to  $Y$  to be any function  $f : X' \rightarrow Y'$  whose domain  $X'$  is a subset of  $X$ , and whose range  $Y'$  is a subset of  $Y$ . Show that the collection of all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$  is itself a set. (Hint: use Exercise 3.4.6, the power set axiom, the replacement axiom, and the union axiom.)

*Proof.* To create the set of all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$ , we follow a four step plan. First, we define the set  $2^X$  of all subsets of  $X$ , and the set  $2^Y$  of all subsets of  $Y$ . Second, we define the set  $A_{X'}$  of all sets of all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$  with domain  $X'$  and a certain range (namely, a range that is any particular element of  $2^Y$ ). Third, we create the set  $\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'}$  of all sets of all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$  with a certain domain (namely, any particular element of  $2^X$ ) and a certain range (namely, any particular element of  $2^Y$ ). Fourth, we create the set  $\bigcup (\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'})$ , which is the set of all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$ , as desired<sup>7</sup>. Let's begin.

- (1) By Exercise 3.4.6, there exists a set  $\{X' : X' \text{ is a subset of } X\}$  (which we may denote by  $2^X$ ) and a set  $\{Y' : Y' \text{ is a subset of } Y\}$  (which we may denote by  $2^Y$ ). In sum, we have defined the sets

$$2^X := \{X' : X' \text{ is a subset of } X\} \qquad 2^Y := \{Y' : Y' \text{ is a subset of } Y\}$$

<sup>7</sup>Do I need to verify that every element of this set is a partial function from  $X$  to  $Y$  and that every partial function from  $X$  to  $Y$  is an element of this set?



- (2) Let  $X'$  be an element of  $2^X$ , let  $Y'$  be any element of  $2^Y$ , and let  $P(Y', Z)$  be the statement  $Z = Y'^{X'}$ . (Note that  $Y'^{X'}$  is the set of all functions with domain  $X'$  and range  $Y'$ , i.e., the set of all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$  with domain  $X'$  and range  $Y'$ , as defined in Axiom 3.10.) Since Axiom 3.10 guarantees the uniqueness of  $B^A$  for any sets  $A, B$ , for every  $Y' \in 2^Y$ , there is exactly one  $Z$  for which  $P(Y', Z)$  is true. Thus, by Axiom 3.6, there exists a set  $\{Z : P(Y', Z) \text{ is true for some } Y' \in 2^Y\}$  (which we may denote by  $A_{X'}$ ). In sum, we have defined for every  $X' \in 2^X$  the set

$$A_{X'} := \{Y'^{X'} : Y' \in 2^Y\}$$

- (3) Let  $2^X$  be an index set. Then by (2), for every  $X' \in 2^X$ , we have some set  $A_{X'}$ . Thus, by Equation 3.1, we can form the union set  $\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'}$  by defining  $\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'} := \bigcup \{A_{X'} : X' \in 2^X\}$ . If we inspect this definition, we see that this set is the set of all elements in every possible  $A_{X'}$  (i.e., every  $A_{X'}$  such that  $X' \in 2^X$ ). Since every element of any  $A_{X'}$  is a set of the type  $Y'^{X'}$ , the above union is really just the set of all  $Y'^{X'}$  for any  $X' \in 2^X$  and any  $Y' \in 2^Y$ . In sum, we have defined the set

$$\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'} := \{Y'^{X'} : X' \in 2^X; Y' \in 2^Y\}$$

- (4) By Axiom 3.10, every  $Y'^{X'}$  is a set. Thus, the set defined in (3) is a set whose elements are all themselves sets. Therefore, Axiom 3.11 applies, and we can create the set  $\bigcup (\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'})$ , whose elements are precisely those objects which are elements of the elements of  $\bigcup_{X' \in 2^X} A_{X'}$ ; in other words, whose elements are every partial function in every  $Y'^{X'}$ , i.e., all partial functions from  $X$  to  $Y$ .

□

7/29: 8. Show that Axiom 3.4 can be deduced from Axiom 3.1, Axiom 3.3, and Axiom 3.11.

*Proof.* To demonstrate Axiom 3.4, we must show that for any two sets  $A, B$ , there exists a set  $A \cup B$  satisfying  $x \in A \cup B$  iff  $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ .

Let  $A, B$  be sets. Then by Axiom 3.1,  $A$  and  $B$  are objects. Thus, by Axiom 3.3, we can create the pair set  $\{A, B\}$ . Since  $\{A, B\}$  has only sets for elements, Axiom 3.11 applies, and implies the existence of  $\bigcup \{A, B\}$ , which we may denote by  $A \cup B$ . Axiom 3.11 also asserts that

$$x \in A \cup B \iff x \in S \text{ for some } S \in \{A, B\}$$

But by Axiom 3.3,  $S \in A \cup B$  iff  $S = A$  or  $S = B$ . Therefore, we have

$$x \in A \cup B \iff x \in S, S \text{ being a set that satisfies } S = A \text{ or } S = B$$

or

$$x \in A \cup B \iff x \in A \text{ or } x \in B$$

□

9. Show that if  $\beta$  and  $\beta'$  are two elements of a set  $I$ , and to each  $\alpha \in I$  we assign a set  $A_\alpha$ , then

$$\{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} = \{x \in A_{\beta'} : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\}$$

and so the definition of  $\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  defined in Equation 3.3 does not depend on  $\beta$ . Also explain why Equation 3.4 is true.

*Proof.* To prove  $\{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} = \{x \in A_{\beta'} : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\}$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that

$$y \in \{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} \iff y \in \{x \in A_{\beta'} : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\}$$

By Equations 3.3 and 3.4, we have

$$y \in \{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} \iff y \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I$$

Similarly, we have

$$y \in \{x \in A_{\beta'} : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} \iff y \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I$$

Therefore, by Exercise A.1.5, we have

$$y \in \{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\} \iff y \in \{x \in A_{\beta'} : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\}$$

as desired.

As to the other question, by Definition 3.1,  $y \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha \implies y \in \{x \in A_\beta : x \in A_\alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in I\}$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.5,  $y \in A_\beta$  and  $y \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$ . But  $A_\beta = A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I$ , so the condition that  $y \in A_\beta$  is a tautology. Thus,  $y \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$ . A similar argument works in the other direction.  $\square$

- 7/31: 10. Suppose that  $I$  and  $J$  are two sets, and for all  $\alpha \in I \cup J$  let  $A_\alpha$  be a set. Show that  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cup (\bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha) = \bigcup_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ . If  $I$  and  $J$  are non-empty, show that  $(\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha) = \bigcap_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ .

*Proof.* To prove that  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cup (\bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha) = \bigcup_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cup (\bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$  is an element of  $\bigcup_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x \in (\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cup (\bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  or  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha$ . We now divide into two cases. If  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ , then by Equation 3.2,  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I$ . By Axiom 3.4, this implies that  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I \cup J$ . Therefore, by Equation 3.2,  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ . On the other hand, if  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha$ , then by an analogous argument to the other case, we have  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ . Now suppose that  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ . Then by Equation 3.2,  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I \cup J$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I$ , or  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in J$ . We now divide into two cases. If  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I$ , then by Equation 3.2, we have  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ . Therefore, by Axiom 3.4, we have  $x \in (\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cup (\bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$ . On the other hand, if  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in J$ , then by an analogous argument to the other case, we have  $x \in (\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cup (\bigcup_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$ .

To prove that  $(\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha) = \bigcap_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $(\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$  is an element of  $\bigcap_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x \in (\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$ . Then by Definition 3.3,  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  and  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha$ . By Equation 3.4, this implies that  $x \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$  and  $x \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in J$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I \cup J$ . Therefore, by Equation 3.4,  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ . Now suppose that  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I \cup J} A_\alpha$ . Then by Equation 3.4,  $x \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I \cup J$ . By Axiom 3.4, this implies that  $x \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$  and  $x \in A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in J$ . Thus, by Equation 3.4, we have  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  and  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.3,  $x \in (\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcap_{\alpha \in J} A_\alpha)$ .  $\square$

11. Let  $X$  be a set, let  $I$  be a non-empty set, and for all  $\alpha \in I$  let  $A_\alpha$  be a subset of  $X$ . Show that  $X \setminus \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha = \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} (X \setminus A_\alpha)$  and  $X \setminus \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha = \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} (X \setminus A_\alpha)$ . This should be compared with de Morgan's laws in Proposition 3.4 (although one cannot derive the above identities directly from de Morgan's laws, as  $I$  could be infinite).

*Proof.* To prove that  $X \setminus \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha = \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} (X \setminus A_\alpha)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $X \setminus \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  is an element of  $\bigcap_{\alpha \in I} (X \setminus A_\alpha)$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x \in X \setminus \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ . Then by Definition 3.4 and Axiom 3.5,  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ . By Equation 3.2, this implies that  $x \notin A_\alpha$  for any  $\alpha \in I$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4,  $x \in X \setminus A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$ . Therefore, by Equation 3.4,  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} (X \setminus A_\alpha)$ . Now suppose that  $x \in \bigcap_{\alpha \in I} (X \setminus A_\alpha)$ . Then by Equation 3.4,  $x \in X \setminus A_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in I$ . By Definition 3.4 and Axiom 3.5, this implies that  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin A_\alpha$  for any  $\alpha \in I$ . Thus, by Equation 3.2,  $x \notin \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ . Therefore, by Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4,  $x \in X \setminus \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$ .

A similar argument can treat the other case.  $\square$

### 3.5 Cartesian Products

- We begin by defining the ordered pair.

**Definition 3.13** (Ordered pair). If  $x$  and  $y$  are any objects (possibly equal), we define the **ordered pair**  $(x, y)$  to be a new object, consisting of  $x$  as its first component and  $y$  as its second component. Two ordered pairs  $(x, y)$  and  $(x', y')$  are considered equal if and only if both their components match, i.e.,

$$(x, y) = (x', y') \iff (x = x' \text{ and } y = y')$$

- It can be proven that this notion of equality obeys the usual axioms of equality (see Exercise 3.5.3).

8/1:

- Note that while order doesn't matter in sets, it does matter in ordered pairs.

– For example,  $\{3, 5\} = \{5, 3\}$ , but  $(3, 5) \neq (5, 3)$ .

- Note that Definition 3.13 is stated as an axiom (since we have simply postulated that for any two objects  $x, y$ , an object of the form  $(x, y)$  exists), but it *is* possible to define ordered pairs solely in terms of the axioms of set theory (see Exercise 3.5.1).

8/4:

- Note that we now use parentheses to enclose ordered pairs, in addition to clarifying the order of operations and enclosing the arguments of functions and properties. However, the usages should still be unambiguous from context.

- We now define the Cartesian product.

**Definition 3.14** (Cartesian product). If  $X$  and  $Y$  are sets, then we define the **Cartesian product**  $X \times Y$  to be the collection of ordered pairs whose first component lies in  $X$  and second component lies in  $Y$ ; thus,

$$X \times Y = \{(x, y) : x \in X, y \in Y\}$$

or equivalently

$$a \in (X \times Y) \iff a = (x, y) \text{ for some } x \in X \text{ and } y \in Y$$

- Although we simply state it here, it can be proven that the Cartesian product is a set (see Exercise 3.5.1).

- Although  $X \times Y$  and  $Y \times X$  are often different sets, they are very similar.

– For example, they have the same number of elements (see Exercise ??).

- Cartesian products allow us to consider functions of two variables.

– “Let  $f : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  be a function whose domain  $X \times Y$  is a Cartesian product of two other sets  $X$  and  $Y$ . Then  $f$  can either be thought of as a function of one variable, mapping the single input of an ordered pair  $(x, y)$  in  $X \times Y$  to an output  $f(x, y)$  in  $Z$ , or as a function of two variables, mapping an input  $x \in X$  and another input  $y \in Y$  to a single output  $f(x, y)$  in  $Z$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 63).

– While the notions are technically different, Tao, 2016 will not distinguish between the two (will hold them both equally true).

– Note that this notion allows us to reinterpret previously defined operations. For example, addition can be defined as the function  $+: \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , defined by  $(x, y) \mapsto x + y$ .

- We now generalize the ordered pair and Cartesian product.

**Definition 3.15** (Ordered  $n$ -tuple and  $n$ -fold Cartesian product). Let  $n$  be a natural number. An **ordered  $n$ -tuple**  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  (also denoted  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ ) is a collection of objects  $x_i$ , one for every natural number  $i$  between 1 and  $n$ ; we refer to  $x_i$  as the  $i^{\text{th}}$  **component** of the ordered  $n$ -tuple. Two ordered  $n$ -tuples  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  and  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  are said to be equal iff  $x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . If  $(X_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  is an ordered  $n$ -tuple of sets, we define their **Cartesian product**  $\prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_i$  (also denoted  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i$  or  $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ ) by

$$\prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_i := \{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : x_i \in X_i \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n\}$$

- Also known as  $[n\text{-tuple}]$  **ordered sequence** (of  $n$  elements), **finite sequence**.
  - There also exist **infinite sequences** (see Chapter ??).
- Note, again, that while Definition 3.15 simply postulates that an ordered  $n$ -tuple and a Cartesian product always exist when needed, it is possible to construct these objects solely in terms of the axioms of set theory (see Exercise 3.5.2).
- The construction of  $n$ -fold Cartesian products in Definition 3.15 can be generalized to infinite Cartesian products (see Definition ??).
- Although  $X_1 \times X_2 \times X_3$  and  $(X_1 \times X_2) \times X_3$  (or  $X_1 \times (X_2 \times X_3)$ ) are often different sets, there exist obvious **bijections** (bijective functions) between them, and it is common to treat them as equal.
- $n$ -fold Cartesian products allow us to consider functions of three or more variables.
  - Again, we can make trouble by using parentheses as above, and by considering different notions of what qualifies as an input, but Tao, 2016 will not distinguish.
- “If  $x$  is an object, then  $(x)$  is a 1-tuple, which we shall identify with  $x$  itself (even though the two are, strictly speaking, not the same object)” (Tao, 2016, p. 64).
  - It follows that if  $X_1$  is any set, then the Cartesian product  $\prod_{1 \leq i \leq 1} X_i$  is just  $X_1$  (since the set of all 1-tuples of the elements of  $X_1$  is equal to the set of all elements of  $X_1$ , i.e.,  $X_1$ ).
- **0-tuple**: The ordered  $n$ -tuple  $()$  containing no objects. Also known as **empty tuple**.
- **Empty Cartesian product**: The Cartesian product  $\prod_{1 \leq i \leq 0} X_i$ , which is equal to the singleton set  $\{()\}$  whose only element is the 0-tuple.
- “If  $n$  is a natural number, we often write  $X^n$  as shorthand for the  $n$ -fold Cartesian product  $X^n := \prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} X$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 65).
  - For example,  $X^2 = X \times X$ ,  $X^1 = X$  (assuming  $(x) = x$ ), and  $X^0 = \{()\}$ .
- We now generalize Lemma 3.1.

**Lemma 3.9** (Finite choice). *Let  $n \geq 1$  be a natural number, and for each natural number  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , let  $X_i$  be a nonempty set. Then there exists an  $n$ -tuple  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  such that  $x_i \in X_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . In other words, if each  $X_i$  is nonempty, then the set  $\prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_i$  is also non-empty.*

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (starting with the base case  $n = 1$ ; the claim is also vacuously true with  $n = 0$  but is not particularly interesting in that case). When  $n = 1$ , the claim follows from Lemma 3.1. Now suppose inductively that the claim has already been proven for some  $n$ ; we will now prove it for  $n++$ . Let  $X_1, \dots, X_{n++}$  be a collection of non-empty sets. By induction hypothesis, we can find an  $n$ -tuple  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  such that  $x_i \in X_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Also, since  $X_{n++}$  is non-empty, by Lemma 3.1 we may find an object  $a$  such that  $a \in X_{n++}$ . If we thus define the  $n++$ -tuple  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n++}$  by setting  $y_i := x_i$  when  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $y_i := a$  when  $i = n++$  it is clear that  $y_i \in X_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n++$ , thus closing the induction.  $\square$

- Note that Lemma 3.9 can be extended to allow for an infinite number of choices, but doing so requires the **axiom of choice** (see Section ??).

## Exercises

- 8/1: 1. Suppose we define the ordered pair  $(x, y)$  for any objects  $x$  and  $y$  by the formula  $(x, y) := \{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$  (thus using several applications of Axiom 3.3). Thus for instance  $(1, 2)$  is the set  $\{\{1\}, \{1, 2\}\}$ ,  $(2, 1)$  is the set  $\{\{2\}, \{2, 1\}\}$ , and  $(1, 1)$  is the set  $\{\{1\}\}$ . Show that such a definition indeed obeys the definition of equality in Definition 3.13, and also whenever  $X$  and  $Y$  are sets, the Cartesian product  $X \times Y$  is also a set. Thus this definition can be validly used as a definition of an ordered pair. For an additional challenge, show that the alternate definition  $(x, y) := \{x, \{x, y\}\}$  also verifies the definition of equality in Definition 3.13 and is thus also an acceptable definition of an ordered pair. (For this latter task, one needs the axiom of regularity, and in particular Exercise 3.2.2.)

*Proof.* To answer the first part of this question (to prove that the given definition of ordered pairs in terms of set theory obeys the appropriate definition of equality), a lemma will be helpful.

**Lemma 3.10.** *Let  $a, b, c$  be objects. Then the singleton sets  $\{a\}$  and  $\{b\}$  are equal if and only if  $a = b$ . Additionally, if  $a = b$ , then the pair sets  $\{a, c\}$  and  $\{b, c\}$  are equal (the inverse of this implication is also true). To summarize, we have the following three implications:*

$$\begin{aligned} a = b &\iff \{a\} = \{b\} \\ a = b &\implies \{a, c\} = \{b, c\} \\ a \neq b &\implies \{a, c\} \neq \{b, c\} \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* To verify that the singleton sets  $\{a\}$  and  $\{b\}$  are equal if and only if  $a = b$ , we must prove that the implication “if  $\{a\} = \{b\}$ , then  $a = b$ ” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that  $\{a\} = \{b\}$ . By Axiom 3.3,  $a \in \{a\}$ . By Definition 3.1 and the fact that  $\{a\} = \{b\}$ , this implies that  $a \in \{b\}$ . But by Axiom 3.3,  $a \in \{b\} \implies a = b$ . Now suppose that  $a = b$ . To prove that  $\{a\} = \{b\}$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $\{a\}$  is an element of  $\{b\}$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.3,  $a$  is the only element of  $\{a\}$ , meaning that to show that every element of  $\{a\}$  is an element of  $\{b\}$ , we need only verify that  $a \in \{b\}$ . But since  $a = b$ , Axiom 3.3 asserts that  $a \in \{b\}$ . A similar argument works in the other direction.

Suppose that  $a = b$ . To prove that  $\{a, c\} = \{b, c\}$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $\{a, c\}$  is an element of  $\{b, c\}$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.3, the only elements of  $\{a, c\}$  are  $a$  and  $c$ , so to show that every element of  $\{a, c\}$  is an element of  $\{b, c\}$ , we need only verify that both  $a$  and  $c$  are elements of  $\{b, c\}$ . But since  $a = b$ , Axiom 3.3 implies that  $a \in \{b, c\}$ , and since  $c = c$ , Axiom 3.3 similarly implies that  $c \in \{b, c\}$ . A similar argument works in the other direction.

Suppose that  $a \neq b$ . To prove that  $\{a, c\} \neq \{b, c\}$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to find a single element  $x$  of  $\{a, c\}$  that is not an element of  $\{b, c\}$ , or a single element  $y$  of  $\{b, c\}$  that is not an element of  $\{a, c\}$ . Now for this part of the problem, we must consider separately three cases of possible relations between the three objects  $a, b, c$ :  $a = c$  (and, hence,  $b \neq c$ ),  $b = c$  (and, hence,  $a \neq c$ ), and  $a \neq c$  and  $b \neq c$ . Suppose first that  $a = c$ . By Axiom 3.3,  $b \in \{b, c\}$ . Since  $b \neq a$  and  $b \neq c$ , Axiom 3.3 implies that  $b \notin \{a, c\}$ . Therefore, there exists an element  $y$  of  $\{b, c\}$  (namely  $b$ ) such that  $y \in \{b, c\}$  and  $y \notin \{a, c\}$ . Suppose second that  $b = c$ . By Axiom 3.3,  $a \in \{a, c\}$ . Since  $a \neq b$  and  $a \neq c$ , Axiom 3.3 implies that  $a \notin \{b, c\}$ . Therefore, there exists an element  $x$  of  $\{a, c\}$  (namely  $a$ ) such that  $x \in \{a, c\}$  and  $x \notin \{b, c\}$ . Suppose third that  $a \neq c$  and  $b \neq c$ . By Axiom 3.3,  $a \in \{a, c\}$ . Since  $a \neq b$  and  $a \neq c$ , Axiom 3.3 implies that  $a \notin \{b, c\}$ . Therefore, there exists an element  $x$  of  $\{a, c\}$  (namely  $a$ ) such that  $x \in \{a, c\}$  and  $x \notin \{b, c\}$ .  $\square$

Now for the (first part of the) primary proof: To verify that the definition  $(x, y) := \{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$  of ordered pairs obeys the definition of equality in Definition 3.13, we must prove that the sets  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$  and  $\{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$  are equal if and only if  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ . To prove this, we must show that the implication “if  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} = \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ , then  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ ” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} = \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ , and suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \neq x'$  or  $y \neq y'$ . We divide into two cases.

- (1) ( $x \neq x'$ ): By Axiom 3.3,  $\{x\} \in \{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$ . Since  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} = \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ , this implies by Definition 3.1 that  $\{x\} \in \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.3,  $\{x\} = \{x'\}$  or  $\{x\} = \{x', y'\}$ . Since  $x \neq x'$  by hypothesis, Lemma 3.10 implies that  $\{x\} \neq \{x'\}$ . Thus, we have that  $\{x\} = \{x', y'\}$ . Since  $x' \in \{x', y'\}$  (Axiom 3.3), Definition 3.1 implies that  $x' \in \{x\}$ . But by Axiom 3.3, this implies that  $x' = x$ , a contradiction.
- (2) ( $y \neq y'$ ): By (1),  $x = x'$ , implying by Lemma 3.10 that  $\{x\} = \{x'\}$ . Additionally, by consecutive applications<sup>[8]</sup> of Lemma 3.10, the facts that  $x = x'$  and  $y \neq y'$  imply that  $\{x, y\} \neq \{x', y'\}$ . Since  $\{x\} = \{x'\}$  and  $\{x, y\} \neq \{x', y'\}$ , consecutive applications of Lemma 3.10 again imply that  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} \neq \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ , a contradiction.

Therefore,  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ . Now suppose that  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ . To prove that  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} = \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$  is an element of  $\{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.3, the only elements of  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$  are  $\{x\}$  and  $\{x, y\}$ , so to show that every element of  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$  is an element of  $\{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ , we need only verify that both  $\{x\}$  and  $\{x, y\}$  are elements of  $\{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ . Since  $x = x'$ , Lemma 3.10 guarantees that  $\{x\} = \{x'\}$ . But by Axiom 3.3, this implies that  $\{x\} \in \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ . On the other hand, since  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ , we have by consecutive applications of Lemma 3.10 that  $\{x, y\} = \{x', y'\}$ . But by Axiom 3.3, this implies that  $\{x, y\} \in \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ . A similar argument can show that every element of  $\{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$  is an element of  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\}$ . Therefore,  $\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} = \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$ .

8/4:

Having shown that ordered pairs are indeed well-defined, we now turn our attention to proving that if  $X$  and  $Y$  are sets, then the Cartesian product  $X \times Y$  is also a set. For this purpose, we adapt the procedure from Exercise 3.4.7. First, for each  $x \in X$ , we define the set  $A_x$  of all ordered pairs whose first component is  $x$  and whose second component is some element of  $Y$ . Second, we create the set  $\bigcup_{x \in X} A_x$ , which is the set of all ordered pairs whose first component is some element of  $X$  and whose second component is some element of  $Y$ , as desired. Let's begin.

- (1) Let  $x$  be an element of  $X$ , let  $y$  be any element of  $Y$ , and let  $P(y, z)$  be the statement  $z = (x, y)$ . (Note that  $(x, y)$  is the ordered pair with first component  $x$  and second component  $y$ , as defined in Definition 3.13). Since Definition 3.13 guarantees the uniqueness of the ordered pair  $(a, b)$  for any objects  $a, b$ , for every  $y \in Y$ , there is exactly one  $z$  for which  $P(y, z)$  is true. Thus, by Axiom 3.6, there exists a set  $\{z : P(y, z) \text{ is true for some } y \in Y\}$  (which we may denote by  $A_x$ ). In sum, we have defined for every  $x \in X$  the set

$$A_x := \{(x, y) : y \in Y\}$$

- (2) Let  $X$  be an index set. Then by (1), for every  $x \in X$ , we have some set  $A_x$ . Thus, by Equation 3.1, we can form the union set  $\bigcup_{x \in X} A_x$  by defining  $\bigcup_{x \in X} A_x := \bigcup \{A_x : x \in X\}$ . If we inspect this definition, we can see that this set is the set of all elements in every possible  $A_x$  (i.e., every  $A_x$  such that  $x \in X$ ). Since every element of any  $A_x$  is an ordered pair with first component  $x$  and second component in  $Y$ , the set  $\bigcup_{x \in X} A_x$  is the set whose elements are every ordered pair whose first component is some element of  $X$  and whose second component is some element of  $Y$ . In sum, we have by Definition 3.14

$$\bigcup_{x \in X} A_x = \{(x, y) : x \in X, y \in Y\} = X \times Y$$

Lastly, we treat the additional challenge. To verify that the definition  $(x, y) := \{x, \{x, y\}\}$  of ordered pairs obeys the definition of equality in Definition 3.13, we must prove that the sets  $\{x, \{x, y\}\}$  and  $\{x', \{x', y'\}\}$  are equal if and only if  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ . To prove this, we must show that the implication “if  $\{x, \{x, y\}\} = \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ , then  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ ” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that  $\{x, \{x, y\}\} = \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ , and suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \neq x'$  or  $y \neq y'$ . We divide into two cases.

<sup>8</sup>By Lemma 3.10,  $x = x' \implies \{x, y\} = \{x', y\}$ , and by Lemma 3.10 again,  $y \neq y' \implies \{x', y\} \neq \{x', y'\}$ . Thus, transitivity implies that  $\{x, y\} \neq \{x', y'\}$ .

- (1) ( $x \neq x'$ ): By Axiom 3.3,  $x \in \{x, \{x, y\}\}$ . Since  $\{x, \{x, y\}\} = \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ , this implies by Definition 3.1 that  $x \in \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.3,  $x = x'$  or  $x = \{x', y'\}$ . Since  $x \neq x'$  by hypothesis, we have  $x = \{x', y'\}$ . A similar argument can show that  $x' = \{x, y\}$ . Substituting, we have that  $x = \{\{x, y\}, y'\}$ . Since  $\{x, y\} \in \{\{x, y\}, y'\}$  (Axiom 3.3), Definition 3.1 implies that  $\{x, y\} \in x$ . But by Axiom 3.3, we also have  $x \in \{x, y\}$ , which contradicts Exercise 3.2.2 (which states that we cannot have  $A \in B$  and  $B \in A$  for two sets  $A, B$ ).
- (2) ( $y \neq y'$ ): By (1),  $x = x'$ . Additionally, by consecutive applications of Lemma 3.10, the facts that  $x = x'$  and  $y \neq y'$  imply that  $\{x, y\} \neq \{x', y'\}$ . Since  $x = x'$  and  $\{x, y\} \neq \{x', y'\}$ , consecutive applications of Lemma 3.10 again imply that  $\{x, \{x, y\}\} \neq \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ , a contradiction.

Therefore,  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ . Now suppose that  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ . To prove that  $\{x, \{x, y\}\} = \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element of  $\{x, \{x, y\}\}$  is an element of  $\{x', \{x', y'\}\}$  and vice versa. By Axiom 3.3, the only elements of  $\{x, \{x, y\}\}$  are  $x$  and  $\{x, y\}$ , so to show that every element of  $\{x, \{x, y\}\}$  is an element of  $\{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ , we need only verify that both  $x$  and  $\{x, y\}$  are elements of  $\{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ . Since  $x = x'$ , Axiom 3.3 implies that  $x \in \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ . On the other hand, since  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ , we have by consecutive applications of Lemma 3.10 that  $\{x, y\} = \{x', y'\}$ . But by Axiom 3.3, this implies that  $\{x, y\} \in \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ . A similar argument can show that every element of  $\{x', \{x', y'\}\}$  is an element of  $\{x, \{x, y\}\}$ . Therefore,  $\{x, \{x, y\}\} = \{x', \{x', y'\}\}$ .  $\square$

2. Suppose we define an ordered  $n$ -tuple to be a surjective function  $x : \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\} \rightarrow X$  whose range is some arbitrary set  $X$  (so different ordered  $n$ -tuples are allowed to have different ranges); we then write  $x_i$  for  $x(i)$ , and also write  $x$  as  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . Using this definition, verify that we have  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  if and only if  $x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Also, show that if  $(X_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  are an ordered  $n$ -tuple of sets, then the Cartesian product, as defined in Definition 3.15, is indeed a set. (Hint: use Exercise 3.4.7 and the axiom of specification.)

*Proof.* To verify that the definition  $x : \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\} \rightarrow X$  of ordered  $n$ -tuples makes the statement “ $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  if and only if  $x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ ” true, we must show that the implication “if  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , then  $x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ ” and its converse are both true under this definition. Suppose first that  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . Since  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  and  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  are both functions, Definition 3.6 implies that  $((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n})(i) = ((y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n})(i)$  for all  $i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . But notationally, this is the same as  $x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Now suppose that  $x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Let  $X := \{x_i : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  and  $Y := \{y_i : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . It can be shown that  $X$  and  $Y$  are equal by Definition 3.1. Similarly, Exercise 3.1.1 implies that  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\} = \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  (note that we are allowed to create this set because Axiom 3.7 implies that the set  $\mathbb{N}$  exists, and Axiom 3.5 implies that we are allowed to cherry-pick elements from it). Thus, since the domain, range, and mappings are equal, we have by Definition 3.6 that  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ .

As to the second part of the question, begin by using Equation 3.1 to define the set  $\bigcup_{i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}} X_i$  containing every element in every set in the ordered  $n$ -tuple  $(X_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . Now we define the function  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\} \rightarrow \bigcup_{i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}} X_i$  (the mapping of this specific function will be irrelevant to our discussion, so we forego defining one). By Exercise 3.4.7, there exists a set  $\{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X \mid I \subseteq \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}, X \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}} X_i\}$  of all partial functions  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  from  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  to  $\bigcup_{i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}} X_i$ . Let  $P((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X)$  be the statement “ $(I = \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\})$  and (for any  $x, x'$  in  $X$ ,  $x \in X_i$  and  $x' \in X_i$  implies that  $x = x'$ ) and (for all  $x \in X$ ,  $((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n})(i) = x$  if and only if  $x \in X_i$ ).” As defined,  $P((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X)$  is a property pertaining to each  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X$  in  $\{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X \mid I \subseteq \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}, X \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}} X_i\}$  that is either true or false. Thus, we can use Axiom 3.5 to create the set

$$\{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X \mid I \subseteq \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}, X \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}} X_i \mid P((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X) \text{ is true}\}$$

which, in layman's terms, is the set of all partial functions that map every number  $i$  in  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  to an element  $x_i$  of  $X_i$ , and that are surjective (we know [Definition 3.9] that every  $x \in X$  maps to an  $i \in I$  since every  $x$  is an element of  $X_i$  for some  $i$  [Equation 3.2] and there exists only one element from each  $X_i$  in  $X$  [if there were two,  $P((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : I \rightarrow X)$  guarantees that they are equal]). Thus, by the function definition of ordered  $n$ -tuples, the above set could be expressed as follows

$$\{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : x_i \in X_i \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n\}$$

making it, by Definition 3.15, the set of all ordered  $n$ -tuples that should be in the  $n$ -fold Cartesian product of  $(X_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ .  $\square$

- 7/31: 3. Show that the definitions of equality for ordered pair and ordered  $n$ -tuple obey the reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity axioms.

*Proof.* We first treat ordered pairs. To prove that ordered pairs obey the reflexivity axiom, we must show that for any ordered pair  $(x, y)$ , we have  $(x, y) = (x, y)$ . By Definition 3.13, to prove that  $(x, y) = (x, y)$ , we must verify that  $x = x$  and  $y = y$ . But since  $x$  and  $y$  are clearly objects of the same type(s) as themselves, respectively, the reflexive axiom of equality (see Section A.7) implies that  $x = x$  and  $y = y$ . To prove that ordered pairs obey the symmetry axiom, we must show that for any two ordered pairs  $(x, y), (x', y')$ , if  $(x, y) = (x', y')$ , then  $(x', y') = (x, y)$ . Since  $(x, y)$  and  $(x', y')$  are both objects of the same type (i.e., both ordered pairs), we know by the symmetry axiom of equality that if  $(x, y) = (x', y')$ , then  $(x', y') = (x, y)$ . To prove that ordered pairs obey the transitivity axiom, we must show that for any three ordered pairs  $(x, y), (x', y'), (x'', y'')$ , if  $(x, y) = (x', y')$  and  $(x', y') = (x'', y'')$ , then  $(x, y) = (x'', y'')$ . By Definition 3.13,  $(x, y) = (x', y') \implies (x = x' \text{ and } y = y')$  and  $(x', y') = (x'', y'') \implies (x' = x'' \text{ and } y' = y'')$ . Since  $x = x'$  and  $x' = x''$ , we have by the transitive axiom of equality that  $x = x''$ . Similarly, we have  $y = y''$ . Thus, by Definition 3.13, we have  $(x, y) = (x'', y'')$ .

8/4:

We now turn our attention to ordered  $n$ -tuples. To prove that ordered  $n$ -tuples obey the reflexivity axiom, we must show that for any ordered  $n$ -tuple  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , we have  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . By Definition 3.15, to prove that  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , we must verify that  $x_i = x_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . But since each  $x_i$  is clearly an object of the same type as itself, the reflexive axiom of equality implies that  $x_i = x_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . To prove that ordered  $n$ -tuples obey the symmetry axiom, we must show that for any two ordered  $n$ -tuples  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}, (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , if  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , then  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . Since  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  and  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  are both objects of the same type (i.e., both ordered  $n$ -tuples), we know by the symmetry axiom of equality that if  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , then  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . To prove that ordered pairs obey the transitivity axiom, we must show that for any three ordered pairs  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}, (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}, (z_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , if  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  and  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (z_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , then  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (z_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ . By Definition 3.15,  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} \implies x_i = y_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $(y_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (z_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} \implies y_i = z_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Since  $x_i = y_i$  and  $y_i = z_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , we have by the transitive axiom of equality that  $x_i = z_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Thus, by Definition 3.15, we have  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} = (z_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ .  $\square$

4. Let  $A, B, C$  be sets. Show that  $A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ , that  $A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$ , and that  $A \times (B \setminus C) = (A \times B) \setminus (A \times C)$ . (One can of course prove similar identities in which the roles of the left and right factors of the Cartesian product are reversed.)

*Proof.* Because of the number of statements to prove and the logical simplicity of the implications involved, we will shorthand these proofs.

We begin by proving that  $A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ , for which it will suffice (Definition 3.1)



to show that  $x \in A \times (B \cup C) \iff x \in (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in (A \times (B \cup C)) &\iff x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \cup C && \text{Definition 3.14} \\
 &\iff (x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \text{ or } x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in C) && \text{Axiom 3.4} \\
 &\iff (x \in (A \times B) \text{ or } x \in (A \times C)) && \text{Definition 3.14} \\
 &\iff x \in (A \times B) \cup (A \times C) && \text{Axiom 3.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

To prove that  $A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$ , we must verify (Definition 3.1) that  $x \in A \times (B \cap C) \iff x \in (A \times B) \cap (A \times C)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in A \times (B \cap C) &\iff x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \cap C && \text{Definition 3.14} \\
 &\iff (x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \text{ and } x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in C) && \text{Definition 3.3} \\
 &\iff (x \in A \times B \text{ and } x \in A \times C) && \text{Definition 3.14} \\
 &\iff x \in (A \times B) \cap (A \times C) && \text{Definition 3.3}
 \end{aligned}$$

To prove that  $A \times (B \setminus C) = (A \times B) \setminus (A \times C)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $x \in A \times (B \setminus C) \iff x \in (A \times B) \setminus (A \times C)$ , which can be done as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \in A \times (B \setminus C) &\iff x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \setminus C && \text{Definition 3.14} \\
 &\iff x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in \{y \in B : y \notin C\} && \text{Definition 3.4} \\
 &\iff (x = (a, b) \text{ for some } a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \text{ and } x \neq (a, b) \text{ for any } a \in A \text{ and } b \in C) && \text{Axiom 3.5} \\
 &\iff (x \in A \times B \text{ and } x \notin A \times C) && \text{Definition 3.14} \\
 &\iff x \in \{y \in A \times B : y \notin A \times C\} && \text{Axiom 3.5} \\
 &\iff x \in (A \times B) \setminus (A \times C) && \text{Definition 3.4}
 \end{aligned}$$

□

5. Let  $A, B, C, D$  be sets. Show that  $(A \times B) \cap (C \times D) = (A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)$ . Is it true that  $(A \times B) \cup (C \times D) = (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ ? Is it true that  $(A \times B) \setminus (C \times D) = (A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D)$ ?

*Proof.* To prove that  $(A \times B) \cap (C \times D) = (A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $(A \times B) \cap (C \times D)$  is an element of  $(A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x \in (A \times B) \cap (C \times D)$ . Then by Definition 3.3,  $x \in (A \times B)$  and  $x \in (C \times D)$ . By Definition 3.14, this implies that  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ , and  $x = (c, d)$  for some  $c \in C$  and  $d \in D$ . By transitivity, we have that  $(a, b) = (c, d)$ , implying by Definition 3.13 that  $a = c$  and  $b = d$ . Thus, we know that  $x = (a, b)$  for some element  $a$  of  $A$  that is also an element of  $C$  and for some element  $b$  of  $B$  that is also an element of  $D$ . In fact, this implies by Definition 3.3 that  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A \cap C$  and  $b \in B \cap D$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.14, we have  $x \in (A \cap C) \times (B \cap D)$ . A similar argument works in the reverse direction.

It is *not* necessarily true<sup>[9]</sup> that  $(A \times B) \cup (C \times D) = (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ ; we may verify this through the following counterexample. Let  $A = \{1\}$ ,  $B = \{2\}$ ,  $C = \{3\}$ , and  $D = \{4\}$ . Then  $A \times B = \{(1, 2)\}$  and  $C \times D = \{(3, 4)\}$ , so  $(A \times B) \cup (C \times D) = \{(1, 2), (3, 4)\}$ . However,  $A \cup C = \{1, 3\}$  and  $B \cup D = \{2, 4\}$ ,

<sup>9</sup>Note, however, that it *is* true that  $(A \times B) \cup (C \times D) \subseteq (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ : to verify as much will require (Definition 3.2) showing that every element  $x$  of  $(A \times B) \cup (C \times D)$  is an element of  $(A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ . Suppose that  $x \in (A \times B) \cup (C \times D)$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in (A \times B)$  or  $x \in (C \times D)$ . We now divide into two cases. If  $x \in (A \times B)$ , then  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$  (Definition 3.14). But by Axiom 3.4,  $a \in A \implies a \in A \cup C$  and  $b \in B \implies b \in B \cup D$ . Thus, we have  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A \cup C$  and  $b \in B \cup D$ , implying by Definition 3.14 that  $x \in (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ . A similar argument can treat the other case.

so  $(A \cup C) \times (B \cup D) = \{(1, 2), (1, 4), (3, 2), (3, 4)\}$ . Thus, for example,  $(1, 4) \in (A \cup C) \times (B \cup D)$ , but  $(1, 4) \notin (A \times B) \cup (C \times D)$ .

Similarly, it is *not* necessarily true<sup>[10]</sup> that  $(A \times B) \setminus (C \times D) = (A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D)$ ; we may verify this through the following counterexample. Let  $A = \{1\}$ ,  $B = \{2\}$ ,  $C = \{1\}$ , and  $D = \{4\}$ . Then  $A \times B = \{(1, 2)\}$  and  $C \times D = \{(1, 4)\}$ , so  $(A \times B) \setminus (C \times D) = \{(1, 2)\}$ . However,  $A \setminus C = \emptyset$ , so  $(A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D) = \emptyset$  as well. Thus, for example,  $(1, 2) \in (A \times B) \setminus (C \times D)$ , but  $(1, 2) \notin (A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D)$ .  $\square$

6. Let  $A, B, C, D$  be non-empty sets. Show that  $A \times B \subseteq C \times D$  if and only if  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq D$ , and that  $A \times B = C \times D$  if and only if  $A = C$  and  $B = D$ . What happens if the hypotheses that the  $A, B, C, D$  are all non-empty are removed?

*Proof.* To prove that  $A \times B \subseteq C \times D$  if and only if  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq D$ , we must verify that the implication “if  $A \times B \subseteq C \times D$ , then  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq D$ ” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that  $A \times B \subseteq C \times D$ . To prove that  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq D$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $a$  of  $A$  is an element of  $C$ , and that every element  $b$  of  $B$  is an element of  $D$ , respectively. Let  $a$  be an arbitrary element of  $A$ , and let  $b$  be an arbitrary element of  $B$ . Consider  $(a, b)$ , the ordered pair whose first component is  $a$  and whose second component is  $b$ . By Definition 3.14,  $(a, b) \in (A \times B)$ , implying by Definition 3.2 that  $(a, b) \in (C \times D)$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.14,  $a \in C$  and  $b \in D$ . Now suppose that  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq D$ . To prove that  $A \times B \subseteq C \times D$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \times B$  is an element of  $C \times D$ . Let  $x$  be an arbitrary element of  $A \times B$ . By Definition 3.14,  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ . It follows by Definition 3.2 that  $a \in C$  and  $b \in D$ . Therefore,  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in C$  and  $b \in D$ , so by Definition 3.14,  $x \in C \times D$ .

To prove that  $A \times B = C \times D$  if and only if  $A = C$  and  $B = D$ , we must verify that the implication “if  $A \times B = C \times D$ , then  $A = C$  and  $B = D$ ” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that  $A \times B = C \times D$ . To prove that  $A = C$  and  $B = D$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $a$  of  $A$  is an element of  $C$  and vice versa, and that every element  $b$  of  $B$  is an element of  $D$  and vice versa, respectively. Let  $a$  be an arbitrary element of  $A$ , and let  $b$  be an arbitrary element of  $B$ . Consider  $(a, b)$ , the ordered pair whose first component is  $a$  and whose second component is  $b$ . By Definition 3.14,  $(a, b) \in (A \times B)$ , implying by Definition 3.1 that  $(a, b) \in (C \times D)$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.14,  $a \in C$  and  $b \in D$ . A similar argument works in the other direction. Now suppose that  $A = C$  and  $B = D$ . To prove that  $A \times B = C \times D$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $A \times B$  is an element of  $C \times D$  and vice versa. Let  $x$  be an arbitrary element of  $A \times B$ . By Definition 3.14,  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ . It follows by Definition 3.1 that  $a \in C$  and  $b \in D$ . Therefore,  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in C$  and  $b \in D$ , so by Definition 3.14,  $x \in C \times D$ . A similar argument works in the other direction.

If the hypotheses that  $A, B, C, D$  are all non-empty are removed, not much happens. If  $C$  or  $D$  is empty, though, then  $A \subseteq C$  and  $B \subseteq D$  becomes a strong enough condition to prove  $A \times B = C \times D$  (since the only subset of the empty set is the empty set,  $A \subseteq C = \emptyset \implies A = \emptyset$ , and similarly for  $B$  and  $D$ ).  $\square$

7. Let  $X, Y$  be sets, and let  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} : X \times Y \rightarrow X$  and  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow Y} : X \times Y \rightarrow Y$  be the maps  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X}(x, y) := x$  and  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow Y}(x, y) := y$ ; these maps are known as the **co-ordinate functions** on  $X \times Y$ . Show that for any functions  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow Y$ , there exists a unique function  $h : Z \rightarrow X \times Y$  such that  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h = f$  and  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow Y} \circ h = g$ . (Compare this to the last part of Exercise 3.3.8, and to Exercise 3.1.7.) This function  $h$  is known as the **direct sum** of  $f$  and  $g$  and is denoted  $h = f \oplus g$ .

<sup>10</sup>Note, however, that it *is* true that  $(A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D) \subseteq (A \times B) \setminus (C \times D)$ : to verify as much will require (Definition 3.2) showing that every element  $x$  of  $(A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D)$  is an element of  $(A \times B) \setminus (C \times D)$ . Suppose that  $x \in (A \setminus C) \times (B \setminus D)$ . Then by Definition 3.14,  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A \setminus C$  and  $b \in B \setminus D$ . By Definition 3.4 and, subsequently, Axiom 3.5,  $a \in A \setminus C \implies (a \in A \text{ and } a \notin C)$ . Similarly,  $b \in B \setminus D \implies (b \in B \text{ and } b \notin D)$ . Thus, we know that  $x = (a, b)$  for some  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ , and  $x \neq (c, d)$  for any combination of elements  $c \in C$  and  $d \in D$ . Therefore, by Definition 3.14,  $x \in (A \times B)$  and  $x \notin (C \times D)$ , which implies by Axiom 3.5 and, subsequently, Definition 3.4 that  $x \in (A \times B) \setminus (C \times D)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $h : Z \rightarrow X \times Y$  be defined by the following.

$$h(z) := (f(z), g(z))$$

To prove that  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h = f$ , Definition 3.6 tells us that it will suffice to show that  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h$  and  $f$  have the same domain and range, and that  $(\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h)(z) = f(z)$  for all  $z \in Z$ . By Definition 3.7,  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h : Z \rightarrow X$ , so  $\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h$  and  $f$  have the same domain and range. Moving on to the next test, we can see by Definition 3.5 that  $f(z) \in X$  and  $g(z) \in Y$ ; thus,  $(f(z), g(z)) \in X \times Y$  by Definition 3.14. Therefore, by Definition 3.7, for any  $z \in Z$ ,  $(\pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X} \circ h)(z) = \pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X}(h(z)) = \pi_{X \times Y \rightarrow X}(f(z), g(z)) = f(z)$ . A similar argument holds for the other case.  $\square$

8. Let  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  be sets. Show that the Cartesian product  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i$  is empty if and only if at least one of the  $X_i$  is empty.

*Proof.* To prove that the Cartesian product  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i$  is empty if and only if at least one of the  $X_i$  is empty, we must verify that the implication “if the Cartesian product  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i$  is empty, then at least one of the  $X_i$  is empty” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that the Cartesian product  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i$  is empty. Then by the contrapositive of Lemma 3.9, at least one of the  $X_i$  is empty. Now suppose that at least one of the  $X_i$  is empty, say  $X_j$  for some  $j \in \{1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . Thus, there exists no ordered  $n$ -tuple  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  such that  $x_i \in X_i$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  (because there will always be no  $x_j \in X_j$ , by Axiom 3.2). Consequently, there are no elements in the set  $\{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : x_i \in X_i \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  since the property “ $P((x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}) = x_i \in X_i \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n$ ” is false for all  $(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ , as previously established (also see Axiom 3.5). Since  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i = \{(x_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} : x_i \in X_i \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ , the uniqueness of the empty set guarantees that  $\prod_{i=1}^n X_i$  is empty.  $\square$

- 8/5: 9. Suppose that  $I$  and  $J$  are two sets, and for all  $\alpha \in I$  let  $A_\alpha$  be a set, and for all  $\beta \in J$  let  $B_\beta$  be a set. Show that  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcup_{\beta \in J} B_\beta) = \bigcup_{(\alpha, \beta) \in I \times J} (A_\alpha \cap B_\beta)$ .

*Proof.* To prove that  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcup_{\beta \in J} B_\beta) = \bigcup_{(\alpha, \beta) \in I \times J} (A_\alpha \cap B_\beta)$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcup_{\beta \in J} B_\beta)$  is an element of  $\bigcup_{(\alpha, \beta) \in I \times J} (A_\alpha \cap B_\beta)$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $x$  is any element of  $(\bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha) \cap (\bigcup_{\beta \in J} B_\beta)$ . Then by Definition 3.3,  $x \in \bigcup_{\alpha \in I} A_\alpha$  and  $x \in \bigcup_{\beta \in J} B_\beta$ . By Equation 3.2, this implies that  $x \in A_\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in I$  and  $x \in B_\beta$  for some  $\beta \in J$ . Since  $\alpha \in I$  and  $\beta \in J$ , Definition 3.14 implies that the ordered pair  $(\alpha, \beta)$  is an element of  $I \times J$ . Additionally, since  $x$  is an element of some  $A_\alpha$  and some  $B_\beta$ , Definition 3.3 implies that  $x \in A_\alpha \cap B_\beta$  for some  $(\alpha, \beta) \in I \times J$ . Although we officially take an agnostic position as to whether or not the family of sets  $A_\alpha \cap B_\beta$  is indexed by one or two labels, if we consider  $(\alpha, \beta)$  to be a single label and  $I \times J$  to be a single index set, then we have by Equation 3.2 that  $x \in \bigcup_{(\alpha, \beta) \in I \times J} (A_\alpha \cap B_\beta)$ . A similar argument works in the reverse direction.  $\square$

10. If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a function, define the **graph** of  $f$  to be the subset of  $X \times Y$  defined by  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$ . Show that two functions  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $\tilde{f} : X \rightarrow Y$  are equal if and only if they have the same graph. Conversely, if  $G$  is any subset of  $X \times Y$  with the property that for each  $x \in X$ , the set  $\{y \in Y : (x, y) \in G\}$  has exactly one element (or in other words,  $G$  obeys the **vertical line test**), show that there is exactly one function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  whose graph is equal to  $G$ .

*Proof.* To prove that two functions  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $\tilde{f} : X \rightarrow Y$  are equal if and only if they have the same graph, we must verify that the implication “if  $f = \tilde{f}$ , then they have the same graph” and its converse are both true. Suppose first that  $f = \tilde{f}$ . By definition, the graph of  $f$  is the subset of  $X \times Y$  defined by  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$ , and the graph of  $\tilde{f}$  is the subset of  $X \times Y$  defined by  $\{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$ . Thus, the question becomes the problem of demonstrating that  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\} = \{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$ . By Definition 3.1, this will require showing that every element of  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$  is an element of  $\{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$  and vice versa. Let  $(x, f(x))$  be an arbitrary element of  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$ . Since  $x = x$  reflexively and  $f(x) = \tilde{f}(x)$  by Definition 3.6, Definition 3.13 implies that  $(x, f(x)) = (x, \tilde{f}(x))$  for some  $(x, \tilde{f}(x))$  (such that  $x \in X$ ). Therefore,  $(x, f(x)) \in \{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$ . A similar

argument works in the reverse direction. Now suppose that  $f$  and  $\tilde{f}$  have the same graph, i.e., that  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\} = \{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$ . To prove that  $f = \tilde{f}$ , already knowing that they have the same domain and range, Definition 3.6 tells us that we need only show in addition that  $f(x) = \tilde{f}(x)$  for all  $x \in X$ . Let  $x$  be an arbitrary element of  $X$ . To  $x$  corresponds the unique ordered pair  $(x, f(x))$ , an object which satisfies all requirements necessary to be an element of  $\{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$ . By Definition 3.1, this implies that  $(x, f(x)) \in \{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$ , i.e., that  $(x, f(x)) = (x, \tilde{f}(x))$  for some  $(x, \tilde{f}(x)) \in \{(x, \tilde{f}(x)) : x \in X\}$ . But by Definition 3.13, this implies that  $f(x) = \tilde{f}(x)$ .

As to the other part of the question, we must first guarantee that for every suitable  $G$ , there exists a function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  whose graph is equal to  $G$ . We must then guarantee the uniqueness of this  $f$ . Let's begin. First off, we are given that  $X$  and  $Y$  are sets. Now for any  $x \in X$ , let  $P(x, y)$  be a property pertaining to an object  $x \in X$  and an object  $y \in Y$ . More specifically, let  $P(x, y)$  be the property  $y \in \{y' \in Y : (x, y') \in G\}$ . By the definition of  $G$ , we know that for each  $x \in X$ , there is exactly one  $y \in Y$  for which  $P(x, y)$  is true (namely the element  $y \in Y$  such that  $(x, y) \in G$  — see Axiom 3.5). Therefore, by Definition 3.5, we can define a function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  defined by  $P$  on the domain  $X$  and range  $Y$ . To show that  $f$  has  $G$  as its graph, we must show that  $G = \{(x', f(x')) : x' \in X\}$ ; showing as much will require (Definition 3.1) verifying that every element of  $G$  is an element of  $\{(x', f(x')) : x' \in X\}$  and vice versa. Suppose first that  $(x, f(x))$  is an arbitrary element of  $G$ . Since  $x \in X$ , Axiom 3.5 implies that  $(x, f(x)) \in \{(x', f(x')) : x' \in X\}$ . On the other hand, let  $(x, f(x))$  be an arbitrary element of  $\{(x', f(x')) : x' \in X\}$ . By the definition of  $f$  (specifically, the property  $P$ ),  $f(x) \in \{y' \in Y : (x, y') \in G\}$ , implying by Axiom 3.5 that  $(x, f(x)) \in G$ . Now suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $\tilde{f} : X \rightarrow Y$  are two different functions whose graphs are both equal to  $G$ , as defined. Since the functions are distinct but have the same domain and range, Definition 3.6 implies the existence of at least one element  $x \in X$  such that  $f(x) \neq \tilde{f}(x)$ . Now by the definition of a graph, we have  $(x, f(x)) \in G$  and  $(x, \tilde{f}(x)) \in G$ . But since  $f(x) \neq \tilde{f}(x)$  (and  $f(x) \in Y$  and  $\tilde{f}(x) \in Y$ ), we thus have two distinct elements in the set  $\{y \in Y : (x, y) \in G\}$  pertaining to the  $x$  in question, a contradiction. Therefore, either  $f$  and  $\tilde{f}$  have distinct graphs, or they are not different functions, implying that if the graph of both  $f$  and  $\tilde{f}$  is  $G$ , then  $f = \tilde{f}$ . All of this together implies that there is exactly one function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  corresponding to any suitable  $G$ .  $\square$

11. Show that Axiom 3.10 can in fact be deduced from Exercise 3.4.6<sup>[11]</sup> and the other axioms of set theory, and thus Exercise 3.4.6 can be used as an alternate formulation of the power set axiom. (Hint: for any two sets  $X$  and  $Y$ , use Exercise 3.4.6 and the axiom of specification to construct the set of all subsets of  $X \times Y$  which obey the vertical line test. Then use Exercise 3.5.10 and the axiom of replacement.)

*Proof.* To verify Axiom 3.10, we must show that the collection of all the functions from  $X$  to  $Y$  is in fact a set. To begin, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be sets. By Definition 3.14 and Exercise 3.5.1, the Cartesian product  $X \times Y$  is a set. Thus, by Exercise 3.4.6, there exists a set  $2^{X \times Y} = \{Z : Z \text{ is a subset of } X \times Y\}$  of all subsets of  $X \times Y$  (note that any subset of  $X \times Y$  is a set of ordered pairs whose first component is an element  $x \in X$  and whose second component is an element  $y \in Y$ ). Now for every  $Z \in 2^{X \times Y}$ , let  $P(Z)$  be a property pertaining to  $Z$ . More specifically, let  $P(Z)$  be the statement “for every  $x \in X$ , exactly one ordered pair  $(x, y)$  is an element of  $Z$ , where  $y$  is some element of  $Y$ .” Thus, by Axiom 3.5, we can create the set  $\{Z \in 2^{X \times Y} : P(Z) \text{ is true}\}$ , which by definition is the set of all subsets of  $X \times Y$  which obey the vertical line test. But by Exercise 3.5.10, for every set that obeys the vertical line test, there is exactly one function  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  whose graph is equal to that set. Thus, if we let  $P(Z, f)$  be the statement “ $Z$  is the graph of  $f$ ,” then we know that for each  $Z \in \{Z \in 2^{X \times Y} : P(Z) \text{ is true}\}$ , there is exactly one, i.e., at most one  $f$  for which  $P(Z, f)$  is true. Therefore, Axiom 3.6 implies the existence of the set  $Y^X = \{f : P(Z, f) \text{ is true for some } Z \in \{Z \in 2^{X \times Y} : P(Z) \text{ is true}\}\}$ , which is the set of all functions from  $X$  to  $Y$ .  $\square$

<sup>11</sup>Isn't this circular since Exercise 3.4.6 was deduced from Axiom 3.10? I suppose it doesn't matter — it just means that we must postulate either Axiom 3.10 or Exercise 3.4.6 (we cannot forego axiomatizing both in the same way that we could forego axiomatizing specification [Exercise 3.1.11]).

12. This exercise will establish a rigorous version of Proposition 2.3. Let  $f : \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a function, and let  $c$  be a natural number. Show that there exists a function  $a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that

$$a(0) = c$$

and

$$a(n++) = f(n, a(n)) \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

and furthermore that this function is unique. (Hint: first show inductively, by a modification of the proof of Lemma 3.9, that for every natural number  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists a unique function  $a_N : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq N\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_N(0) = c$  and  $a_N(n++) = f(n, a_N(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < N$ .) For an additional challenge, prove this result without using any properties of the natural numbers other than the Peano axioms directly (in particular, without using the ordering of the natural numbers, and without appealing to Proposition 2.3). (Hint: first show inductively, using only the Peano axioms and basic set theory, that for every natural number  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists a unique pair  $A_N, B_N$  of subsets of  $\mathbb{N}$  which obeys the following properties: (a)  $A_N \cap B_N = \emptyset$ , (b)  $A_N \cup B_N = \mathbb{N}$ , (c)  $0 \in A_N$ , (d)  $N++ \in B_N$ , (e) Whenever  $n \in B_N$ , we have  $n++ \in B_N$ , and (f) Whenever  $n \in A_N$  and  $n \neq N$ , we have  $n++ \in A_N$ . Once one obtains these sets, use  $A_N$  as a substitute for  $\{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq N\}$  in the previous argument.)

*Proof.* We first prove that for every natural number  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists a unique function  $a_N : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq N\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_N(0) = c$  and  $a_N(n++) = f(n, a_N(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < N$ . We induct on  $N$  (starting with the base case  $N = 1$ ; the claim is also vacuously true with  $N = 0$  but is not particularly interesting in that case). Let's begin.

When  $N = 1$ , we seek to prove that there exists a unique function  $a_1 : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq 1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_1(0) = c$  and  $a_1(n++) = f(n, a_1(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < 1$ . Since 0 is the only natural number less than 1, we need only show that there exists a unique function  $a_1 : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq 1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_1(0) = c$  and  $a_1(1) = f(0, a_1(0))$ . We begin by showing that such a function exists. Let the function  $a_1 : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq 1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be defined by  $a_1(0) := c$  and  $a_1(1) := f(0, a_1(0))$  (note that 0 and 1 are the only elements in the domain of  $a_1$ , so defining mappings for only them suffices to define  $a_1$ ). Since  $f$  is defined for all ordered pairs whose components are natural numbers, and 0 and  $a_1(0) = c$  are natural numbers,  $f(0, a_1(0))$  is defined (and is a natural number, i.e., is an element of the defined range of  $a_1$ ). Thus, for the base case  $N = 1$ , there exists a function  $a_1 : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq 1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_1(0) = c$  and  $a_1(n++) = f(n, a_1(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < 1$ . Now we must show that  $a_1$  is unique. Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $\tilde{a}_1 : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq 1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is another function such that  $\tilde{a}_1(0) = c$  and  $\tilde{a}_1(n++) = f(n, \tilde{a}_1(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < 1$  and  $a_1 \neq \tilde{a}_1$ . Since the functions are distinct but have the same domain and range, Definition 3.6 implies the existence of at least one element  $n \in \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq 1\}$  such that  $a_1(n) \neq \tilde{a}_1(n)$ . As before,  $\tilde{a}_1$  is only defined for 0 and 1, so either  $a_1(0) \neq \tilde{a}_1(0)$  or  $a_1(1) \neq \tilde{a}_1(1)$ . Since both  $a_1(0)$  and  $\tilde{a}_1(0)$  are equal to  $c$  by definition, transitivity implies that  $a_1(0) = \tilde{a}_1(0)$ , so we must have  $a_1(1) \neq \tilde{a}_1(1)$ . But  $a_1(1) = f(0, a_1(0)) = f(0, \tilde{a}_1(0)) = \tilde{a}_1(1)$ , a contradiction. Therefore, if we assert that  $\tilde{a}_1$  is defined like  $a_1$ , then  $a_1 = \tilde{a}_1$ , proving the uniqueness of  $a_1$  and, hence, the claim for the base case  $N = 1$ .

Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for  $N$ , i.e., we know that there exists a unique function  $a_N : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq N\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_N(0) = c$  and  $a_N(n++) = f(n, a_N(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < N$ . We seek to prove that there exists a unique function  $a_{N++} : \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq N++\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_{N++}(0) = c$  and  $a_{N++}(n++) = f(n, a_{N++}(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < N++$ . We begin by showing that such a function exists. If we define  $a_{N++}$  by setting  $a_{N++}(n) := a_N(n)$  when  $n \in \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \leq N\}$  and  $a_{N++}(N++) := f(N, a_{N++}(N))$  (which we know exists for the same reasons detailed in the proof of the base case), it is clear that  $a_{N++}(0) = c$  and  $a_{N++}(n++) = f(n, a_{N++}(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $n < N++$ , thus closing the induction. The uniqueness of  $a_{N++}$  can be verified in much the same way that the uniqueness of  $a_1$  was demonstrated for the base case.

Now we tie it all together. Let  $a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a function defined by  $a(n) := a_n(n)$ , where  $a_n$  is the appropriate function defined above. Thus, we have

$$a(0) = a_0(0) = c$$

and

$$a(n++) = a_{n++}(n++) = f(n, a_{n++}(n)) = f(n, a_n(n)) = f(n, a(n)) \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

as desired. Now we must verify the uniqueness of  $a$ . Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $\tilde{a} : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is another function such that  $\tilde{a}(0) = c$  and  $\tilde{a}(n++) = f(n, \tilde{a}(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $a \neq \tilde{a}$ . Since the functions are distinct but have the same domain and range, Definition 3.6 implies the existence of at least one element  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a(n) \neq \tilde{a}(n)$ . Thus, to find a contradiction, we must show that  $a(n) = \tilde{a}(n)$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , which we may do by induction. For the base case  $n = 0$ , we have  $a(0) = c = \tilde{a}(0)$ . Now suppose inductively that  $a(n) = \tilde{a}(n)$ . Then  $a(n++) = f(n, a(n)) = f(n, \tilde{a}(n)) = \tilde{a}(n++)$ , which closes the induction. Thus, we have found the desired contradiction. Therefore, if we assert that  $\tilde{a}$  is defined like  $a$ , then  $a = \tilde{a}$ , proving the uniqueness of  $a$  and, hence, completing the proof.

To treat the additional challenge, a couple of lemmas will be helpful.

**Lemma 3.11.** *Let  $A, B$  be sets. Then we have  $A \setminus B \subseteq A$ .*

*Proof.* By Exercise 3.1.6h,  $A \setminus (\emptyset \cap B) = (A \setminus \emptyset) \cup (A \setminus B)$ . By Exercise 3.1.6a,  $\emptyset \cap B = \emptyset$ ; thus  $A \setminus \emptyset = (A \setminus \emptyset) \cup (A \setminus B)$ . This implies by Exercise 3.1.5 that  $A \setminus B \subseteq A$ , as desired.  $\square$

8/6: **Lemma 3.12.** *Let  $A, B, C, D$  be sets. Then if  $A \subsetneq C$ ,  $B \subsetneq D$ , and  $C \cap D = \emptyset$ , we have  $A \cup B \subsetneq C \cup D$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $A \subsetneq C$  and  $B \subsetneq D$ . To show that  $A \cup B \subsetneq C \cup D$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that we must show that  $A \cup B \subseteq C \cup D$  and  $A \cup B \neq C \cup D$ . We begin by showing that  $A \cup B \subseteq C \cup D$ . To do so, Definition 3.2 tells us that we must verify that every element  $x$  of  $A \cup B$  is an element of  $C \cup D$ . Let  $x$  be an arbitrary element of  $A \cup B$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $x \in A$  or  $x \in B$ . We divide into two cases. If  $x \in A$ , then Definition 3.2 implies that  $x \in C$ , and Axiom 3.4 implies that  $x \in C \cup D$ . Similarly, if  $x \in B$ , then Definition 3.2 implies that  $x \in D$ , and Axiom 3.4 implies that  $x \in C \cup D$ . Therefore,  $A \cup B \subseteq C \cup D$ . Now to show that  $A \cup B \neq C \cup D$ , Definition 3.1 tells us that we must find an element of  $A \cup B$  that is not an element of  $C \cup D$ , or an element of  $C \cup D$  that is not an element of  $A \cup B$ . Since every element of  $A \cup B$  is an element of  $C \cup D$  as previously established, we must find an element of  $C \cup D$  that is not an element of  $A \cup B$ . First off, there exists an element (which we shall call  $x$ ) of  $C$  that is not an element of  $A$ <sup>[12]</sup> (if such an element did not exist, then every element of  $C$  would be an element of  $A$ , which, when combined with the fact that every element of  $A$  is an element of  $C$ , would imply that  $A = C$ , contradicting the fact that  $A \subsetneq C$ ). We wish to show that this object  $x$  is an element of  $C \cup D$  but not an element of  $A \cup B$ . Clearly, since  $x \in C$ ,  $x \in C \cup D$  (Axiom 3.4). On the other hand, if we suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $x \in B$ , we will find that  $x \in D$  (Definition 3.2), implying by Definition 3.3 that  $x \in C \cap D$  and contradicting the fact that  $C \cap D = \emptyset$ . Thus,  $x \notin B$ . Since it is also not an element of  $A$  by hypothesis, Axiom 3.4 implies that  $x \notin A \cup B$ . Therefore,  $A \cup B \neq C \cup D$  and, hence,  $A \cup B \subsetneq C \cup D$ .  $\square$

8/5: Now for the primary proof (of the additional challenge). We first prove that for every natural number  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists a unique pair  $A_N, B_N$  of subsets of  $\mathbb{N}$  which obeys the following properties: (a)  $A_N \cap B_N = \emptyset$ , (b)  $A_N \cup B_N = \mathbb{N}$ , (c)  $0 \in A_N$ , (d)  $N++ \in B_N$ , (e) Whenever  $n \in B_N$ , we have  $n++ \in B_N$ , and (f) Whenever  $n \in A_N$  and  $n \neq N$ , we have  $n++ \in A_N$ . We induct on  $N$ . Let's begin.

For the base case  $N = 0$ , let  $A_0 = \{0\}$  and let  $B_0 = \mathbb{N} \setminus A_0$ . First, we show that  $A_0, B_0$  are in fact subsets of  $\mathbb{N}$ . By Axiom 3.3, 0 is the only element of  $A_0$ . Thus, by Definition 3.2, to show that  $A_0 \subseteq \mathbb{N}$ , we need only show that  $0 \in \mathbb{N}$ . But by Axiom 3.7,  $0 \in \mathbb{N}$ . On the other hand, Lemma 3.11 implies that  $B_0 = \mathbb{N} \setminus A_0 \subseteq \mathbb{N}$ . Next, we check that  $A_0, B_0$  satisfy the properties (a)-(f).

- (a) By Exercise 3.1.6g, we have  $A_0 \cap B_0 = A_0 \cap (\mathbb{N} \setminus A_0) = \emptyset$ .
- (b) By Exercise 3.1.6g, we also have  $A_0 \cup B_0 = A_0 \cup (\mathbb{N} \setminus A_0) = \mathbb{N}$ .
- (c) By Axiom 3.3,  $0 \in A_0$ .

<sup>12</sup>Note that we could also choose to study an element of  $D$  that is not an element of  $B$ ; the choice to study an element of  $C$  that is not an element of  $A$  is wholly arbitrary.

- (d) By Axiom 2.2,  $0++$  is a natural number, so Axiom 3.7 implies that  $0++ \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since Axiom 2.3 asserts that  $0++ \neq 0$ ,  $0++ \notin A_0$  by Axiom 3.3. Thus, by Axiom 3.5,  $0++ \in \{n \in \mathbb{N} : n \notin A_0\}$ . Consequently, by Definition 3.4,  $0++ \in \mathbb{N} \setminus A_0$ , implying that  $0++ \in B_0$ .
- (e) For any  $n \in B_0$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  (Definition 3.2). Thus, by Axiom 3.7,  $n++ \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $n++ \neq 0$  (Axiom 2.3),  $n++ \notin A_0$  by Axiom 3.3. Thus, by Axiom 3.5 and subsequently Definition 3.4,  $n++ \in \mathbb{N} \setminus A_0$ , which implies that  $n++ \in B_0$ .
- (f) By Axiom 3.3, 0 is the only element of  $A_0$ , so there is no  $n \in A_0$  such that  $n \neq 0$ . Thus, the statement “whenever  $n \in A_0$  and  $n \neq 0$ , we have  $n++ \in A_0$ ” is vacuously true.

Last, we prove the uniqueness of  $A_0$  and  $B_0$ . Suppose for the sake of contradiction that there exist a pair of subsets  $A_0'$  and  $B_0'$  of  $\mathbb{N}$  that satisfy all the same properties as  $A_0$  and  $B_0$  and such that  $A_0' \neq A_0$  and  $B_0' \neq B_0$ . We begin by examining the construction of  $B_0'$ . By property (d),  $0++ \in B_0'$ , and by property (e), whenever  $n \in B_0'$ , we have  $n++ \in B_0'$ ; thus,  $B_0'$  contains the successors of every natural number. Now consider  $A_0'$ . By property (c),  $0 \in A_0'$ . Additionally, since  $A_0 \neq A_0'$  by hypothesis, Definition 3.1 implies that there is some element of  $A_0$  that is not in  $A_0'$  or there is some element of  $A_0'$  that is not in  $A_0$ . However, since 0 is the only element of  $A_0$  (Axiom 3.3) and  $0 \in A_0'$  as previously established, there is no element of  $A_0$  that is not in  $A_0'$ . Thus, there must be some element  $n \neq 0$  of  $A_0'$  that is not in  $A_0$ . Let's take a closer look at this  $n$ : since  $A_0'$  is a subset of  $\mathbb{N}$ ,  $n$  is a natural number. Since  $n \neq 0$ ,  $n$  is the successor of some natural number (Axiom 2.3); this implies that  $n$  is an element of  $B_0'$ . Thus,  $n \in A_0' \cap B_0'$  (Definition 3.3), contradicting property (a). Therefore, if we assert that  $A_0'$  and  $B_0'$  satisfy all the same properties as  $A_0$  and  $B_0$ , then  $A_0' = A_0$  and  $B_0' = B_0$ , proving the uniqueness of  $A_0$  and  $B_0$ .

Now suppose inductively that we have proven that for some natural number  $N$ , there exists a unique pair  $A_N, B_N$  of subsets of  $\mathbb{N}$  which obeys properties (a)-(f) above. We seek to prove the same for  $N++$ . Let  $A_{N++} = A_N \cup \{N++\}$  and let  $B_{N++} = \mathbb{N} \setminus A_{N++}$ . First, we show that  $A_{N++}, B_{N++}$  are in fact subsets of  $\mathbb{N}$ . Since  $N$  is a natural number, by Axiom 2.2,  $N++$  is a natural number, i.e., is an element of  $\mathbb{N}$  (Axiom 3.7). Thus, since the singleton set  $\{N++\}$  contains only  $N++$  (Axiom 3.3),  $\{N++\} \subseteq \mathbb{N}$  (Definition 3.2). This, combined with the fact that  $A_N \subseteq \mathbb{N}$  by hypothesis, implies that  $A_{N++} = A_N \cup \{N++\} \subseteq \mathbb{N}$  (Exercise 3.1.7). On the other hand, Lemma 3.11 implies that  $B_{N++} = \mathbb{N} \setminus A_{N++} \subseteq \mathbb{N}$ . Next, we check that  $A_N, B_N$  satisfy the properties (a)-(f).

- (a) By Exercise 3.1.6g, we have  $A_{N++} \cap B_{N++} = A_{N++} \cap (\mathbb{N} \setminus A_{N++}) = \emptyset$ .
- (b) By Exercise 3.1.6g, we also have  $A_{N++} \cup B_{N++} = A_{N++} \cup (\mathbb{N} \setminus A_{N++}) = \mathbb{N}$ .
- (c) Since  $0 \in A_N$ , Axiom 3.4 implies that  $0 \in A_N \cup \{N++\} = A_{N++}$ .
- (d) As previously established,  $N++$  is a natural number. Thus, by Axiom 2.2,  $(N++)++$  is a natural number. Consequently, Axiom 3.7 implies that  $(N++)++ \in \mathbb{N}$ . Now suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $(N++)++ \in A_{N++}$ . Then  $(N++)++ \in A_N \cup \{N++\}$ , so by Axiom 3.4,  $(N++)++ \in A_N$  or  $(N++)++ \in \{N++\}$ . Since  $(N++)++ \neq N++$  (Axiom 2.4),  $(N++)++ \notin \{N++\}$  (Axiom 3.3); thus, we must have  $(N++)++ \in A_N$ . But by property (d),  $N++ \in B_N$ , implying by property (e) that  $(N++)++ \in B_N$ . Thus,  $(N++)++ \in A_N \cap B_N$  by Definition 3.3, implying that  $A_N \cap B_N \neq \emptyset$ , which contradicts property (a). Thus,  $(N++)++ \notin A_{N++}$ . Therefore, by Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4,  $(N++)++ \in \mathbb{N} \setminus A_{N++} = B_{N++}$ .
- (e) We want to show that for any  $n \in B_{N++}$ , we have  $n++ \in B_{N++}$ . As such, let  $n$  be an arbitrary element of  $B_{N++}$ . By Definition 3.4 and Axiom 3.5, to show that  $n++ \in B_{N++}$ , it will suffice to show that  $n++ \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $n++ \notin A_{N++}$ . We first show that  $n++ \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $n \in B_{N++}$ , Definition 3.4 and Axiom 3.5 imply that  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.7,  $n++ \in \mathbb{N}$ . We now turn our attention to demonstrating that  $n++ \notin A_{N++}$ , which we may do by the following contradiction argument. Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $n++ \in A_{N++}$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $n++ \in A_N$  or  $n++ \in \{N++\}$ . We now divide into two cases. Suppose first that  $n++ \in A_N$ . Since  $n \in B_{N++} = \mathbb{N} \setminus A_{N++} = \mathbb{N} \setminus (A_N \cup \{N++\})$  by hypothesis,  $n \in (\mathbb{N} \setminus A_N) \cap (\mathbb{N} \setminus \{N++\}) = B_N \cap (\mathbb{N} \setminus \{N++\})$  by Exercise 3.1.6h. Thus, by Definition 3.3,  $n \in B_N$ , so by property (e),  $n++ \in B_N$ . Since  $n++$  is also an element of  $A_{N++}$  by hypothesis, this implies by Definition 3.3 that  $n++ \in A_{N++} \cap B_{N++}$ , contradicting the fact that  $A_{N++} \cap B_{N++} = \emptyset$  by property (a). Now suppose that  $n++ \in \{N++\}$ .

Then Axiom 3.3 implies that  $n++ = N++$ . Thus, Axiom 2.4 implies that  $n = N$ . Since  $N \in A_N$  (if  $N$  were an element of  $B_N$  then either  $N = N++$  or  $N$  equals some iterated successor of  $N++$ ; both eventualities are forebidden by Axioms 2.3 and 2.4), we have that  $n \in A_N$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.4,  $n \in A_{N++}$ . Since  $n$  is also an element of  $B_{N++}$  by hypothesis, this implies by Definition 3.3 that  $n \in A_{N++} \cap B_{N++}$ , contradicting the fact that  $A_{N++} \cap B_{N++} = \emptyset$  by property (a). Therefore,  $n++ \notin A_{N++}$ .

- (f) For any  $n \in A_{N++}$ , Axiom 3.4 implies that  $n \in A_N$  or  $n \in \{N++\}$ . We divide into two cases. Suppose first that  $n \in A_N$ . Then either  $n = N$  or  $n \neq N$ . We divide into two cases again. If  $n = N$ , then  $n++ = N++ \in \{N++\}$  as previously established, implying that  $n++ \in A_N \cup \{N++\} = A_{N++}$  by Axiom 3.4. On the other hand, if  $n \neq N$ , then  $n++ \in A_N$  since  $A_N$  obeys property (f), implying by Axiom 3.4 again that  $n++ \in A_{N++}$ . Now suppose that  $n \in \{N++\}$ . Then by Axiom 3.3,  $n = N++$ , and property (f) does not apply. Therefore, whenever  $n \in A_{N++}$  and  $n \neq N++$ , we have  $n++ \in A_{N++}$ .

8/6:

Last, we prove the uniqueness of  $A_{N++}$  and  $B_{N++}$ . Suppose for the sake of contradiction that there exist a pair of subsets  $A_{N++}'$  and  $B_{N++}'$  of  $\mathbb{N}$  that satisfy all the same properties as  $A_{N++}$  and  $B_{N++}$  and such that  $A_{N++}' \neq A_{N++}$  and  $B_{N++}' \neq B_{N++}$ . By property (c),  $0 \in A_{N++}'$ , and by property (f), whenever  $n \in A_{N++}'$  and  $n \neq N++$ ,  $n++ \in A_{N++}'$ . Since this also defines exactly the elements of  $A_{N++}$ , we know that at least every element of  $A_{N++}$  is an element of  $A_{N++}'$ . This, combined with the fact that  $A_{N++}' \neq A_{N++}$ , implies that  $A_{N++} \subsetneq A_{N++}'$  (Definition 3.2). Similarly, we can use properties (d) and (e) to show that  $B_{N++} \subsetneq B_{N++}'$ . These two proper subset relations combined with the fact that  $A_{N++}' \cap B_{N++}' = \emptyset$  (property (a)) imply by Lemma 3.12 that  $A_{N++} \cup B_{N++} \subsetneq A_{N++}' \cup B_{N++}'$ . But by property (b), this implies that  $\mathbb{N} \subsetneq \mathbb{N}$ , i.e., that  $\mathbb{N} \neq \mathbb{N}$ , a contradiction. Therefore, if we assert that  $A_{N++}'$  and  $B_{N++}'$  have all the same properties as  $A_{N++}$  and  $B_{N++}$ , then  $A_{N++}' = A_{N++}$  and  $B_{N++}' = B_{N++}$ , proving the uniqueness of  $A_{N++}$  and  $B_{N++}$ .

We now prove that for every natural number  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , there exists a unique function  $a_N : A_N \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_N(0) = c$  and  $a_N(n++) = f(n, a_N(n))$  for all  $n \in A_N$  such that  $n \neq N$ . We induct on  $N$  (starting with the base case  $N = 1$ ; the claim is also vacuously true with  $N = 0$  but is not particularly interesting in that case). Let's begin.

When  $N = 1$ , we seek to prove that there exists a unique function  $a_1 : A_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_1(0) = c$  and  $a_1(n++) = f(n, a_1(n))$  for all  $n \in A_1$  such that  $n \neq 1$ . By the preceding proof of the existence and uniqueness of  $A_N, B_N$ , we know that  $A_1 = A_0 \cup \{1\} = \{0\} \cup \{1\}$ . By Exercise 3.1.3,  $\{0\} \cup \{1\} = \{0, 1\}$ , so  $A_1$  is the pair set formed by 0 and 1. Now since 0 is the only element of  $A_1$  that is not equal to 1 (we know that  $0 \neq 1$  by Axiom 2.3), we need only show that there exists a unique function  $a_1 : A_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_1(0) = c$  and  $a_1(1) = f(0, a_1(0))$ . We begin by showing that such a function exists. Let the function  $a_1 : A_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be defined by  $a_1(0) := c$  and  $a_1(1) := f(0, a_1(0))$  (since 0 and 1 are the only elements of  $A_1$  by Axiom 3.3, defining mappings for only them suffices to define  $a_1$ ). Since  $f$  is defined for all ordered pairs whose components are natural numbers, and 0 and  $a_1(0) = c$  are natural numbers,  $f(0, a_1(0))$  is defined (and is a natural number, i.e., is an element of the defined range of  $a_1$ ). Thus, for the base case  $N = 1$ , there exists a function  $a_1 : A_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_1(0) = c$  and  $a_1(n++) = f(n, a_1(n))$  for all  $n \in A_1$  such that  $n \neq 1$ . Now we must show that  $a_1$  is unique. Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $\tilde{a}_1 : A_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is another function such that  $\tilde{a}_1(0) = c$  and  $\tilde{a}_1(n++) = f(n, \tilde{a}_1(n))$  for all  $n \in A_1$  such that  $n \neq 1$  and  $a_1 \neq \tilde{a}_1$ . Since the functions are distinct but have the same domain and range, Definition 3.6 implies the existence of at least one element  $n \in A_1$  such that  $a_1(n) \neq \tilde{a}_1(n)$ . As before,  $\tilde{a}_1$  is only defined for 0 and 1, so either  $a_1(0) \neq \tilde{a}_1(0)$  or  $a_1(1) \neq \tilde{a}_1(1)$ . Since both  $a_1(0)$  and  $\tilde{a}_1(0)$  are equal to  $c$  by definition, transitivity implies that  $a_1(0) = \tilde{a}_1(0)$ , so we must have  $a_1(1) \neq \tilde{a}_1(1)$ . But  $a_1(1) = f(0, a_1(0)) = f(0, \tilde{a}_1(0)) = \tilde{a}_1(1)$ , a contradiction. Therefore, if we assert that  $\tilde{a}_1$  is defined like  $a_1$ , then  $a_1 = \tilde{a}_1$ , proving the uniqueness of  $a_1$  and, hence, the claim for the base case  $N = 1$ .

Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for  $N$ , i.e., we know that there exists a unique function  $a_N : A_N \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_N(0) = c$  and  $a_N(n++) = f(n, a_N(n))$  for all  $n \in A_N$  such that  $n \neq N$ . We seek to prove that there exists a unique function  $a_{N++} : A_{N++} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a_{N++}(0) = c$  and  $a_{N++}(n++) = f(n, a_{N++}(n))$  for all  $n \in A_{N++}$  such that  $n \neq N++$ . We begin by showing that



such a function exists. If we define  $a_{N++}$  by setting  $a_{N++}(n) := a_N(n)$  when  $n \in A_N$  (recall that since  $A_{N++} = A_N \cup \{N++\}$ , every element save one of  $A_{N++}$  is an element of  $A_N$  and, thus, is mapped by  $a_N$  by hypothesis) and  $a_{N++}(N++) := f(N, a_{N++}(N))$  (which we know exists for the same reasons detailed in the proof of the base case), it is clear that  $a_{N++}(0) = c$  and  $a_{N++}(n++) = f(n, a_{N++}(n))$  for all  $n \in A_{N++}$  such that  $n \neq N++$ , thus closing the induction. The uniqueness of  $a_{N++}$  can be verified in much the same way that the uniqueness of  $a_1$  was demonstrated for the base case.

Now we tie it all together. Let  $a : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a function defined by  $a(n) := a_n(n)$ , where  $a_n$  is the appropriate function defined above. Thus, we have

$$a(0) = a_0(0) = c$$

and

$$a(n++) = a_{n++}(n++) = f(n, a_{n++}(n)) = f(n, a_n(n)) = f(n, a(n)) \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

as desired. Now we must verify the uniqueness of  $a$ . Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $\tilde{a} : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is another function such that  $\tilde{a}(0) = c$  and  $\tilde{a}(n++) = f(n, \tilde{a}(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $a \neq \tilde{a}$ . Since the functions are distinct but have the same domain and range, Definition 3.6 implies the existence of at least one element  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $a(n) \neq \tilde{a}(n)$ . Thus, to find a contradiction, we must show that  $a(n) = \tilde{a}(n)$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , which we may do by induction. For the base case  $n = 0$ , we have  $a(0) = c = \tilde{a}(0)$ . Now suppose inductively that  $a(n) = \tilde{a}(n)$ . Then  $a(n++) = f(n, a(n)) = f(n, \tilde{a}(n)) = \tilde{a}(n++)$ , which closes the induction. Thus, we have found the desired contradiction. Therefore, if we assert that  $\tilde{a}$  is defined like  $a$ , then  $a = \tilde{a}$ , proving the uniqueness of  $a$  and, hence, completing the additional challenge.  $\square$

13. The purpose of this exercise is to show that there is essentially only one version of the natural number system in set theory (cf. the note in Section 2.1 on isomorphic number systems). Suppose we have a set  $\mathbb{N}'$  of “alternative natural numbers,” an “alternative zero”  $0'$ , and an “alternative increment operation” which takes any alternative natural number  $n' \in \mathbb{N}'$  and returns another alternative natural number  $n'++' \in \mathbb{N}'$ , such that the Peano axioms (Axioms 2.1-2.5) all hold with the natural numbers, zero, and increment replaced by their alternative counterparts. Show that there exists a bijection  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}'$  from the natural numbers to the alternative natural numbers such that  $f(0) = 0'$ , and such that for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $n' \in \mathbb{N}'$ , we have  $f(n) = n'$  if and only if  $f(n++) = n'++'$ . (Hint: use Exercise 3.5.12.)

*Proof.* Let  $g : \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}' \rightarrow \mathbb{N}'$  be defined by  $g(a, b) = b++'$ . Then by Exercise 3.5.12, there exists a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}'$  such that  $f(0) = c$  and  $f(n++) = g(n, f(n))$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . If we let  $c = 0'$ , then we have  $f(0) = 0'$ . On the other hand, if  $f(n) = n'$ , then we have  $f(n++) = g(n, f(n)) = g(n, n') = n'++'$  and vice versa.  $\square$

## 3.6 Cardinality of Sets

8/8:

- In Chapter 2, the natural numbers were defined axiomatically — we assumed an object 0, an increment operation, and five axioms. As previously noted, this is quite different from the intuitive conceptualization of the natural numbers as measuring how many elements are in a set. More formally...
  - Chapter 2 treats natural numbers as **ordinals**: “The ordinals are First, Second, Third, ..., and are used to order a sequence of objects” (Tao, 2016, p. 68).
  - Intuitively, natural numbers are treated as **cardinals**: “The cardinals are One, Two, Three, ..., and are used to count how many things there are in a set” (Tao, 2016, p. 68).
  - There is a subtle difference between the two (especially in the infinite case), but this is beyond the scope of Tao, 2016.
- This section is concerned with using the natural numbers to count sets.

8/9:

- We first define a rigorous basis for two sets having the same number of elements. Tao, 2016 intuitively rationalizes Cantor's one-to-one matching principle by saying "Indeed, this is how we first learn to count a set: we correspond the set we are trying to count with another set, such as a set of fingers on your hand" (Tao, 2016, p. 68).

**Definition 3.16** (Equal cardinality). We say that two sets  $X$  and  $Y$  have **equal cardinality** iff there exists a bijection  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  from  $X$  to  $Y$ .

- Definition 3.16 allows us to easily prove that sets have equal cardinality, but does not make it immediately easy to prove that sets have unequal cardinality.
  - For example, an obvious bijection exists between  $\{0, 1, 2\}$  and  $\{3, 4, 5\}$ , but to prove that  $\{0, 1, 2\}$  and  $\{3, 4\}$  have unequal cardinality, we would have to verify that all functions  $f : \{0, 1, 2\} \rightarrow \{3, 4\}$  are not bijective, or make use of Proposition 3.5.
- Note that Definition 3.16 treats both the finite and infinite case (though remember that we have not yet rigorously defined this distinction).
- Note that "the fact that two sets have equal cardinality does not preclude one of the sets from containing the other" (Tao, 2016, p. 69).
  - For example, "if  $X$  is the set of natural numbers and  $Y$  is the set of even natural numbers, then the map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  defined by  $f(n) := 2n$  is a bijection from  $X$  to  $Y$ ... and so  $X$  and  $Y$  have equal cardinality, despite  $Y$  being a subset of  $X$  and seeming intuitively as if it should only have 'half' of the elements of  $X$ " (Tao, 2016, p. 69).
- The notion of having equal cardinality is an equivalence relation (see Exercise 3.6.1).
- We now define precisely what it means for a set to have  $n$  elements.

**Definition 3.17.** Let  $n$  be a natural number. A set  $X$  is said to have **cardinality  $n$**  iff it has equal cardinality with  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . We also say that  **$X$  has  $n$  elements** iff it has cardinality  $n$ .

- Note that we could compare cardinality with the set  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : i < n\}$  as opposed to the set  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ .
- It would make sense that each set should have exactly one cardinality (i.e., not multiple). Let's make sure that Definition 3.17 implies this.

**Proposition 3.5** (Uniqueness of cardinality). *Let  $X$  be a set with some cardinality  $n$ . Then  $X$  cannot have any other cardinality, i.e.,  $X$  cannot have cardinality  $m$  for any  $m \neq n$ .*

We first need a lemma.

**Lemma 3.13.** *Suppose that  $n \geq 1$ , and  $X$  has cardinality  $n$ . Then  $X$  is non-empty, and if  $x$  is any element of  $X$ , then the set  $X - \{x\}$  (i.e.,  $X$  with the element  $x$  removed) has cardinality  $n - 1$ <sup>[13]</sup>.*

*Proof.* If  $X$  is empty, then it clearly cannot have the same cardinality as the nonempty set  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ , as there is no bijection from the empty set to a non-empty set<sup>[14]</sup>. Now let  $x$  be an element of  $X$ . Since  $X$  has the same cardinality as  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ , we thus have a bijection  $f$  from  $X$  to  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . In particular,  $f(x)$  is a natural number between 1 and  $n$ . Now define the function  $g : X - \{x\} \rightarrow \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n - 1\}$  by the following rule: for any  $y \in X - \{x\}$ , we define  $g(y) := f(y)$  if  $f(y) < f(x)$ , and define  $g(y) := f(y) - 1$  if  $f(y) > f(x)$ . (Note that  $f(y)$  cannot equal

<sup>13</sup>"Strictly speaking,  $n - 1$  has not yet been defined in this text. For the purposes of this lemma, we define  $n - 1$  to be the unique natural number  $m$  such that  $m++ = n$ ; this  $m$  is given by [Exercise 2.2.2]" (Tao, 2016, p. 70).

<sup>14</sup>Any potential bijection would be the empty function  $f : \emptyset \rightarrow \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . To be bijective, we would have to have exactly one  $x \in \emptyset$  such that  $f(x) = i$  for all  $i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . But even if there were only one  $i$  in  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ , there would be no  $x \in \emptyset$  (because there are no  $x \in \emptyset$ ) such that  $f(x) = i$ .

$f(x)$  since  $y \neq x$  and  $f$  is a bijection.) It is easy to check that this map is also a bijection<sup>[15]</sup>, and so  $X - \{x\}$  has equal cardinality with  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . In particular,  $X - \{x\}$  has cardinality  $n - 1$ , as desired.  $\square$

Now we prove the proposition.

*Proof of Proposition 3.5.* We induct on  $n$ . First suppose that  $n = 0$ . Then  $X$  must be empty, and so  $X$  cannot have any non-zero cardinality. Now suppose that the proposition is already proven for some  $n$ ; we now prove it for  $n++$ . Let  $X$  have cardinality  $n++$ , and suppose that  $X$  also has some other cardinality  $m \neq n++$ . By Lemma 3.13,  $X$  is non-empty, and if  $x$  is any element of  $X$ , then  $X - \{x\}$  has cardinality  $n$  and also has cardinality  $m - 1$ . By induction hypothesis, this means that  $n = m - 1$ , which implies that  $m = n++$ , a contradiction. This closes the induction.  $\square$

- 8/10:
- As previously alluded to, we can now show that  $\{0, 1, 2\}$  and  $\{3, 4\}$  do not have equal cardinality since  $\{0, 1, 2\}$  has cardinality 3 and  $\{3, 4\}$  has cardinality 2.
  - We now rigorously define the distinction between finite and infinite sets.

**Definition 3.18** (Finite sets). A set is **finite** iff it has cardinality  $n$  for some natural number  $n$ ; otherwise, the set is called **infinite**. If  $X$  is a finite set, we use  $\#(X)$  to denote the cardinality of  $X$ .

- Here's an example of an infinite set.

**Theorem 3.1.** *The set of natural number  $\mathbb{N}$  is infinite.*

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that the set of natural numbers  $\mathbb{N}$  was finite, so it has some cardinality  $\#(\mathbb{N}) = n$ . Then there is a bijection  $f$  from  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  to  $\mathbb{N}$ . One can show that the sequence  $f(1), f(2), \dots, f(n)$  is bounded, or more precisely that there exists a natural number  $M$  such that  $f(i) \leq M$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  (see Exercise 3.6.3). But then the natural number  $M + 1$  is not equal to any of the  $f(i)$ , contradicting the hypothesis that  $f$  is a bijection.  $\square$

- Note that a similar argument can show that other unbounded sets are infinite.
- While the naturals and the even naturals are of equal size, note that it is possible for some sets to be “more” infinite than others (see Section ??).
- See Exercise 3.6.4 for some relations between cardinality and the arithmetic of natural numbers.

## Exercises

- 8/9: 1. Prove the following proposition.

**Proposition 3.6.** *Let  $X, Y, Z$  be sets. Then  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $X$ . If  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $Y$ , then  $Y$  has equal cardinality with  $X$ . If  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $Y$  and  $Y$  has equal cardinality with  $Z$ , then  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $Z$ .*

*Proof.* To prove that  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $X$ , Definition 3.16 tells us that it will suffice to show that there exists a bijection  $f : X \rightarrow X$  from  $X$  to  $X$ . Let  $f$  be the identity map on  $X$ , i.e.,  $f(x) := x$  for all  $x \in X$ . To show that  $f$  is bijective, we must verify that the statement “for every  $x \in X$ , there is exactly one  $x$  such that  $f(x) = x$ ” is true (Definition 3.10). But since  $f$  is a function defined as above, Definition 3.5 implies that this statement is true.

<sup>15</sup>We know that for every  $i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ , there is exactly one  $y \in X$  such that  $f(y) = i$ . We want to show that for every  $i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n - 1\}$ , there is exactly one  $y \in X - \{x\}$  such that  $g(y) = i$ . Consider any  $i \in \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . If  $i < f(x)$ , choose the unique element  $y \in X - \{x\}$  such that  $f(y) = i$ . By definition,  $g(y) = f(y) = i$ , and  $g(y') \neq g(y)$  unless  $y' = y$ . If  $i \geq f(x)$ , choose the unique element  $y \in X - \{x\}$  such that  $f(y) = i + 1$ . By definition,  $g(y) = f(y) - 1 = i$ , and  $g(y') \neq g(y)$  unless  $y' = y$ .

To prove that  $Y$  has equal cardinality with  $X$ , Definition 3.16 tells us that it will suffice to show that there exists a bijection  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  from  $Y$  to  $X$ . To begin, since  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $Y$ , there exists a bijection  $f^{-1} : X \rightarrow Y$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  (Definition 3.16). Let  $f = (f^{-1})^{-1}$ . Thus,  $f$  maps  $Y$  to  $X$  by definition, and  $f$  is bijective by Exercise 3.3.6.

To prove that  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $Z$ , Definition 3.16 tells us that it will suffice to show that there exists a bijection  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  from  $X$  to  $Z$ . To begin, since  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $Y$  and  $Y$  has equal cardinality with  $Z$ , there exists a bijection  $g : X \rightarrow Y$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  and there exists a bijection  $h : Y \rightarrow Z$  from  $Y$  to  $Z$ , respectively (Definition 3.16). Let  $f = h \circ g$ . Thus,  $f$  maps  $X$  to  $Z$  by Definition 3.7, and  $f$  is bijective by Exercise 3.3.7.  $\square$

- 8/12: 2. Show that a set  $X$  has cardinality 0 if and only if  $X$  is the empty set.

*Proof.* We first need a lemma.

**Lemma 3.14.** *There exists no natural number  $i$  satisfying  $1 \leq i \leq 0$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that there exists some natural number  $i$  satisfying  $1 \leq i \leq 0$ . Since  $i \leq 0$  by hypothesis but  $i \geq 0$  by Exercise 2.2.4a, Exercise 2.2.3c implies that  $i = 0$ . However, we also have  $i \geq 1$ , which implies that  $i > 0$  by Exercise 2.2.3e, and that  $i \neq 0$  by Definition 2.3, a contradiction. Therefore, no natural number  $i$  satisfies  $1 \leq i \leq 0$ .  $\square$

Now for the primary proof. Suppose first that  $X$  has cardinality 0. Then by Definition 3.17, there exists a bijection  $f : \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq 0\} \rightarrow X$ . Since there is no natural number  $i$  (i.e., no element of  $\mathbb{N}$ ) satisfying  $1 \leq i \leq 0$  (Lemma 3.14),  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq 0\} = \emptyset$ . Thus, the bijection  $f$  maps  $\emptyset$  to  $X$ . But since  $f$  is an empty function and a bijection, Exercise 3.3.3 asserts that the range of  $f$  is the empty set, i.e.,  $X = \emptyset$ . Now suppose that  $X$  is the empty set. Then for  $f : X \rightarrow \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$  to be a bijection, we must have  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\} = \emptyset$  (Exercise 3.3.3 again). As previously established, this happens when  $n = 0$  (note that we need not rule out this happening for all other  $n$  since we have Proposition 3.5). Thus, by Definition 3.17,  $\#(X) = 0$ .  $\square$

- 8/10: 3. Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $f : \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a function. Show that there exists a natural number  $M$  such that  $f(i) \leq M$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . (Hint: induct on  $n$ . You may also want to peek at Lemma ??.) Thus, finite subsets of the natural numbers are bounded.

*Proof.* We induct on  $n$  (starting with the case where  $n = 1$ ; the claim is also vacuously true when  $n = 0$ , but is not particularly interesting in that case). When  $n = 1$ , there is only one object (namely, the natural number 1) in the domain of  $f$ . Thus, there is only one  $f(i)$  (namely,  $f(1)$ ). Therefore, if we choose  $M := f(1)$ , then it is true that  $f(i) \leq M$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for some  $n$ ; we wish to prove it for  $n++$ . By induction hypothesis,  $f(i) \leq M$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Since  $M \leq M + f(n++)$  and  $f(n++) \leq M + f(n++)$ , we have  $f(i) \leq M + f(n++)$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $f(n++) \leq M + f(n++)$ . Thus, if we choose  $M' := M + f(n++)$ , then  $f(i) \leq M'$  for all  $1 \leq i \leq n++$ , thus closing the induction.  $\square$

4. Prove the following proposition.

**Proposition 3.7** (Cardinal arithmetic).

- (a) *Let  $X$  be a finite set, and let  $x$  be an object which is not an element of  $X$ . Then  $X \cup \{x\}$  is finite and  $\#(X \cup \{x\}) = \#(X) + 1$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the set  $X$ . Since  $X$  is finite, Definition 3.18 implies that  $\#(X) = n$  for some natural number  $n$ . Thus, by Definition 3.17,  $X$  has equal cardinality with  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ ; it follows by Definition 3.16 that there exists a bijection  $f : X \rightarrow \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . Now consider the set  $\{x\}$ . Let  $g : \{x\} \rightarrow \{n+1\}$  be the function defined by  $g(x) := n+1$ . Then because the single element  $n+1$  of  $\{n+1\}$  comes from exactly one element of  $\{x\}$ ,  $g$  is bijective. At this

point, define the function  $h : X \cup \{x\} \rightarrow \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n+1\}$  by the following rule: for any  $y \in X$ , we define  $h(y) := f(y)$ , and define  $h(x) := g(x)$ . (Note that  $f(y)$  cannot equal  $g(x)$  since  $g(x)$  is not in the range of  $f$ , i.e.,  $n+1 \notin \{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ .) As defined,  $h$  is bijective (let  $i$  be an arbitrary element of  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n+1\}$ . If  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , then the bijectivity of  $f$  (and the previously established fact that  $f(y) \neq g(x)$  for any  $y \in X$ ) implies that there is exactly one element  $z$  of  $X \cup \{x\}$  such that  $h(z) = i$ . If it is not true that  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , then  $i = n+1$ ; thus, the bijectivity of  $g$  (and the previously established fact that  $f(y) \neq g(x)$  for any  $y \in X$ ) implies that there is exactly one element  $z$  of  $X \cup \{x\}$  such that  $h(z) = i$ ). Therefore,  $X \cup \{x\}$  has equal cardinality with  $\{i \in \mathbb{N} : 1 \leq i \leq n+1\}$  (Definition 3.16), implying by Definition 3.17 that  $\#(X \cup \{x\}) = n+1 = \#(X) + 1$ . Also, since  $n+1$  is a natural number, Definition 3.18 implies that  $X \cup \{x\}$  is finite.  $\square$

8/12:

- (b) Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be finite sets. Then  $X \cup Y$  is finite and  $\#(X \cup Y) \leq \#(X) + \#(Y)$ . If in addition  $X$  and  $Y$  are disjoint (i.e.,  $X \cap Y = \emptyset$ ), then  $\#(X \cup Y) = \#(X) + \#(Y)$ .

*Proof.* We first treat the case where  $X$  and  $Y$  are not necessarily disjoint. To begin, we need several lemmas.

**Lemma 3.15.** Let  $n, m$  be a natural numbers such that  $n = m++$ . Then  $n \geq 1$ .

*Proof.* By Axiom 2.3, the fact that  $n$  is the successor of some natural number proves that  $n \neq 0$ . Additionally, by Exercise 2.2.4, we have  $n \geq 0$ . But since  $n \neq 0$ , Definition 2.3 implies that  $n > 0$ . Consequently, by Exercise 2.2.3e,  $n \geq 0++$ , i.e.,  $n \geq 1$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.16.** Let  $X$  be a finite set, and let  $x$  be an object which is an element of  $X$ . Then  $X \cup \{x\}$  is finite and  $\#(X \cup \{x\}) = \#(X)$ .

*Proof.* By Axiom 3.3,  $x$  is the only element of  $\{x\}$ . Thus, by Definition 3.2, to show that  $\{x\} \subseteq X$ , it will suffice to show that  $x \in X$ . But  $x$  is an element of  $X$  by hypothesis. It follows by Exercise 3.1.5 that  $X \cup \{x\} = X$ . Since  $X \cup \{x\}$  is equal to a finite set,  $X \cup \{x\}$  is finite, itself. Consequently, Definition 3.18 implies that  $\#(X \cup \{x\})$  exists, and, substituting,  $\#(X \cup \{x\}) = \#(X)$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.17.** Let  $X, Y$  be sets. If  $y$  is any element of  $Y$ , then  $X \cup Y = (X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}$ .

*Proof.* If  $y \in Y$ , then for the same reasons outlined in the proof of Lemma 3.16,  $\{y\} \subseteq Y$ . By Exercise 3.1.6g, this implies that  $(Y \setminus \{y\}) \cup \{y\} = Y$ . Thus, Lemma 3.2 and the fact that the  $\cup$  operation obeys the axiom of substitution show that  $X \cup Y = (X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}$ , as desired.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.18.** Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $n-1$  be defined as in Lemma 3.13. Then  $n-1+1 = n$ .

*Proof.* By Lemma 3.13,  $n-1$  equals the unique element  $m$  satisfying  $m++ = n$ . Substituting, Lemma 2.2 and Definition 2.2 give us  $n-1+1 = m+1 = (m+0)++ = m++ = n$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.19.** Let  $X, Y$  be disjoint sets (i.e., we have  $X \cap Y = \emptyset$ ), and let  $y$  be any element of  $Y$ . Then we have  $y \notin X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$ .

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $y \in X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$ . Then by Axiom 3.4,  $y \in X$  or  $y \in Y \setminus \{y\}$ . If  $y \in Y \setminus \{y\}$ , then by Definition 3.4 and subsequently Axiom 3.5,  $y \notin \{y\}$  (and  $y \in Y$ , but we already know this). However,  $y \notin \{y\}$  contradicts Axiom 3.3, so  $y \notin Y \setminus \{y\}$ . Thus, we must have  $y \in X$ . But then since  $y \in X$  and  $y \in Y$ , Definition 3.3 implies that  $y \in X \cap Y$ . Consequently, Definition 3.1 implies that  $y \in \emptyset$ , contradicting Axiom 3.2. Therefore,  $y \notin X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.20.** Let  $A, X, Y$  be sets, and let  $X \cap Y = \emptyset$ . Then  $X \cap (Y \setminus A) = \emptyset$ .

*Proof.* Suppose for the sake of contradiction that for some object  $x$ ,  $x \in X \cap (Y \setminus A)$ . By Definition 3.3, this implies that  $x \in X$  and  $x \in Y \setminus A$ . By Definition 3.4 followed by Axiom 3.5,  $x \in X$  and  $x \in Y$  (and  $x \notin A$ , but this is not relevant to our present discussion). Since  $x \in X$  and  $x \in Y$ , Definition 3.3 implies that  $x \in X \cap Y$ . But by Definition 3.1, this implies that  $x \in \emptyset$ , which contradicts Axiom 3.2. Therefore,  $x \notin X \cap (Y \setminus A)$  for all objects  $x$ , which, by the uniqueness of the empty set, proves that  $X \cap (Y \setminus A) = \emptyset$ .  $\square$

Now for the primary proof (of the first part of the question). Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are finite, Definition 3.18 implies that  $\#(X) = n$  and  $\#(Y) = m$  for some natural numbers  $n, m$ . We induct on  $m$  (holding  $n$  constant).

For the base case  $m = 0$ , we have by Exercise 3.6.2 that  $Y = \emptyset$ . Thus, by Exercise 3.1.3,  $X \cup Y = X \cup \emptyset = X$ . Since  $X \cup Y$  is equal to a finite set,  $X \cup Y$  is finite. It follows that  $\#(X \cup Y) = \#(X) \leq \#(X) + \#(Y)$  (note that we could use  $=$  instead of  $\leq$  here, but we use  $\leq$  because of the nature of the claim). This completes the proof of the base case.

Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for some natural number  $m$ ; we now seek to prove it for  $m++$ . Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be finite sets with  $\#(Y) = m++$ . As we are taking an induction approach, we want to reduce the case of  $\#(Y) = m++$  to a case of  $\#(Y') = m$ , where  $Y'$  is some set. We do this by partitioning  $Y$  and then analyzing the partition with previously derived statements. However, any proof relating cardinalities will require the established finitude of a couple of sets, so we begin there.

As mentioned above, we begin by demonstrating that  $X \cup Y$  is finite. Since  $\#(Y) = m++$  where  $m$  is a natural number, we know that  $\#(Y) \geq 1$  (Lemma 3.15). Thus, Lemma 3.13 applies, and asserts that  $\#(Y \setminus \{y\}) = (m++) - 1 = m$  (note that  $(m++) - 1 = m$  since  $m$  is clearly the unique element such that  $m++ = m++$ ; refer to the definition of  $n - 1$  for natural numbers  $n$  in Lemma 3.13). Thus, by induction hypothesis,  $X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$  is finite (note that the finitude of this set, itself, will be important later). It follows by either Exercise 3.6.4a or Lemma 3.16 (depending on whether or not  $y$  is an element of  $X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$  — remember, while we know that  $y \notin Y \setminus \{y\}$  because of Definition 3.4, Axiom 3.5, and Axiom 3.3, it is still possible that  $y \in X$ ) that  $(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}$  is finite. But by Lemma 3.17, this implies that  $X \cup Y$  is finite.

The remainder of the first part of the proof will be an inequality with comments interjected in between steps. By the above, we have that  $\#(X \cup Y)$  exists, and by Lemma 3.17, we have that

$$\#(X \cup Y) = \#((X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\})$$

If we treat  $X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$  as a single finite set (which we are allowed to because of the above), then either Exercise 3.6.4a or Lemma 3.16 applies, once again depending on whether or not  $y$  is an element of  $X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$ . If  $y \notin X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$ , then Exercise 3.6.4a tells us that  $\#((X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}) = \#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) + 1$ . On the other hand, if  $y \in X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$ , then Lemma 3.16, then  $\#((X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}) = \#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\}))$ . Either way, we can conclude that  $\#((X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}) \leq \#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) + 1$ . Continuing from the equation above, we can write

$$\leq \#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) + 1$$

Since  $X$  and  $Y \setminus \{y\}$  are finite and  $\#(Y \setminus \{y\}) = m$ , as established above, the induction hypothesis applies and asserts that  $\#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \leq \#(X) + \#(Y \setminus \{y\})$ . Continuing from the above inequality, this allows us to write

$$\leq \#(X) + \#(Y \setminus \{y\}) + 1$$

By Lemma 3.13,  $\#(Y \setminus \{y\}) = \#(Y) - 1$ . Substituting, we may write

$$= \#(X) + \#(Y) - 1 + 1$$

Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are finite,  $\#(X)$  and  $\#(Y)$  are natural numbers. Thus, by Definition 2.2,  $\#(X) + \#(Y)$  is a natural number. Consequently, Lemma 3.18 applies, and we can at last conclude the following.

$$= \#(X) + \#(Y)$$

We now address the second part of the question, which we may do in a very similar manner to the first part. Let's begin.

Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are finite, Definition 3.18 implies that  $\#(X) = n$  and  $\#(Y) = m$  for some natural numbers  $n, m$ . We induct on  $m$  (holding  $n$  constant). For the base case  $m = 0$ , we have by Exercise 3.6.2 that  $Y = \emptyset$ . Thus, by Exercise 3.1.3,  $\#(X \cup Y) = \#(X) = \#(X) + 0 = \#(X) + \#(Y)$ . Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for some natural number  $m$ ; we now seek to prove it for  $m++$ . Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be finite sets with  $\#(Y) = m++$  and  $X \cap Y = \emptyset$ . The remainder of the proof will be equations with comments interjected between steps. By the proof of the first part, we have that  $\#(X \cup Y)$  exists, and by Lemma 3.17, we have that

$$\#(X \cup Y) = \#((X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\})$$

Since  $X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})$  is a finite set and  $y$  is not an element of it (Lemma 3.19), Exercise 3.6.4a applies. As such, we have that  $\#((X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) \cup \{y\}) = \#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) + 1$ . Thus, continuing from the above equation, we can write

$$= \#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) + 1$$

Since  $X$  and  $Y \setminus \{y\}$  are finite by hypothesis,  $X \cap (Y \setminus \{y\}) = \emptyset$  by Lemma 3.20, and  $\#(Y \setminus \{y\}) = m$  as established above, the induction hypothesis applies and asserts that  $\#(X \cup (Y \setminus \{y\})) = \#(X) + \#(Y \setminus \{y\})$ . Thus, we can write

$$= \#(X) + \#(Y \setminus \{y\}) + 1$$

By Lemma 3.13,  $\#(Y \setminus \{y\}) = \#(Y) - 1$ . Substituting, we may write

$$= \#(X) + \#(Y) - 1 + 1$$

Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are finite,  $\#(X)$  and  $\#(Y)$  are natural numbers. Thus, by Definition 2.2,  $\#(X) + \#(Y)$  is a natural number. Consequently, Lemma 3.18 applies, and we can at last conclude the following.

$$= \#(X) + \#(Y)$$

□

8/13:

- (c) Let  $X$  be a finite set, and let  $Y$  be a subset of  $X$ . Then  $Y$  is finite, and  $\#(Y) \leq \#(X)$ . If in addition  $Y \neq X$  (i.e.,  $Y$  is a proper subset of  $X$ ), then we have  $\#(Y) < \#(X)$ .

*Proof.* We first need a couple of lemmas.

**Lemma 3.21.** *The only subset of the empty set is the empty set.*

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be a set. Suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $A \subseteq \emptyset$  and  $A \neq \emptyset$ . Since  $A \neq \emptyset$ , Lemma 3.1 applies, and asserts that there exists an object  $x$  such that  $x \in A$ . But by Definition 3.2, the fact that  $A \subseteq \emptyset$  implies that  $x \in \emptyset$ , contradicting Axiom 3.2. □

**Lemma 3.22.** *Let  $A, X, Y$  be sets, and let  $Y \subseteq X$ . Then  $Y \setminus A \subseteq X \setminus A$ .*

*Proof.* To prove that  $Y \setminus A \subseteq X \setminus A$ , Definition 3.2 tells us that it will suffice to show that every element  $x$  of  $Y \setminus A$  is an element of  $X \setminus A$ . Suppose  $x$  is an arbitrary element of  $Y \setminus A$ . Then by Definition 3.4 and subsequently Axiom 3.5,  $x \in Y$  and  $x \notin A$ . Since  $x \in Y$ , Definition 3.2 implies that  $x \in X$ . Thus, since  $x \in X$  and  $x \notin A$ , Axiom 3.5 and Definition 3.4 consecutively imply that  $x \in X \setminus A$ . □

Now for the primary proof (of the first part of the question). We first show that, under the given conditions,  $Y$  is finite. Since  $X$  is finite, we have by Definition 3.18 that  $\#(X) = n$  for some natural number  $n$ . To prove that all subsets  $Y$  of a set  $X$  of any cardinality  $n$  are finite, we induct on  $n$ . For the base case  $n = 0$ , by Exercise 3.6.2,  $X$  is the empty set. Since the empty set is the only subset of the empty set (Lemma 3.21), we need only show that the empty set is finite. But by Exercise 3.6.2 again, the empty set is finite, proving the base case. Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for  $n$ ; we seek to verify it for  $n++$ . Let  $X$  be a finite set with  $\#(X) = n++$ , let  $Y \subseteq X$ , and let  $x$  be any element of  $X$ . By Lemma 3.13,  $X \setminus \{x\}$  is finite and  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$ . This combined with the fact that  $Y \setminus \{x\} \subseteq X \setminus \{x\}$  (Lemma 3.22) imply by the induction hypothesis that  $Y \setminus \{x\}$  is finite. Thus, by Exercise 3.6.4a,  $(Y \setminus \{x\}) \cup \{x\}$  is finite. Since  $(Y \setminus \{x\}) \cup \{x\} = Y$  by Exercise 3.1.6g,  $Y$  is finite. This closes the induction.

Knowing that  $Y$  is finite, we can now say that the statement  $\#(Y) \leq \#(X)$  is well defined, and we can seek to prove it. By Exercise 3.1.6g,  $Y \cup (X \setminus Y) = X$  and  $Y \cap (X \setminus Y) = \emptyset$ . Since  $X \setminus Y \subseteq X$  (Lemma 3.11), by the above,  $X \setminus Y$  is finite. Thus, since  $Y$  and  $X \setminus Y$  are finite and disjoint, we have by Exercise 3.6.4b that  $\#(Y) + \#(X \setminus Y) = \#(X)$ . Therefore, we know that  $\#(Y) \leq \#(Y) + \#(X \setminus Y) = \#(X)$ , i.e.,  $\#(Y) \leq \#(X)$ , as desired.

As to the second part of the question, let  $X$  be a finite set, let  $Y \subsetneq X$ , and let  $x$  be an element of  $X$  that is not an element of  $Y$  (the existence of such an element is discussed in the proof of Lemma 3.12). For this proof, we derive two simple inequalities and then combine them to yield the desired claim. Let's begin.

- (1) By Definition 3.2,  $Y \subsetneq X \implies Y \subseteq X$ . Thus, by the proof of the first part of this question,  $Y$  is finite. This and the fact that  $x \notin Y$  imply by Exercise 3.6.4a that  $\#(Y \cup \{x\}) = \#(Y) + 1$ . Therefore, by Exercise 2.2.3f,  $\#(Y) < \#(Y \cup \{x\})$ .
- (2) By the proof of Lemma 3.16,  $\{x\} \subseteq X$ . Since we also have  $Y \subseteq X$ , Exercise 3.1.7 implies that  $Y \cup \{x\} \subseteq X$ . Therefore, by the proof of the first part of the question,  $\#(Y \cup \{x\}) \leq \#(X)$ .

Therefore, since (1) tells us that  $\#(Y) < \#(Y \cup \{x\})$  and (2) tells us that  $\#(Y \cup \{x\}) \leq \#(X)$ , we have that  $\#(Y) < \#(Y \cup \{x\}) \leq \#(X)$ , i.e.,  $\#(Y) < \#(X)$ , as desired.  $\square$

- (d) If  $X$  is a finite set, and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a function, then  $f(X)$  is a finite set with  $\#(f(X)) \leq \#(X)$ . If in addition  $f$  is one-to-one, then  $\#(f(X)) = \#(X)$ .

*Proof.* We begin with a lemma.

**Lemma 3.23.** Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a function, and let  $x$  be an element of its domain  $X$ . Then  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x)\}$  and  $f(x) \notin f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})$ .

*Proof.* By Definition 3.11,  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x') : x' \in \{x\}\}$ . Thus, by Axiom 3.3, this implies that  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x') : x' = x\}$ . Therefore, by Axiom 3.5,  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x)\}$ , proving the first claim. As to the second claim, suppose for the sake of contradiction that  $f(x) \in f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})$ . By the first claim,  $f(X) \setminus f(\{x\}) = f(X) \setminus \{f(x)\}$ . Thus, by Definition 3.4,  $f(x) \in \{y \in f(X) : y \notin \{f(x)\}\}$ . By Axiom 3.5, this implies that  $f(x) \notin \{f(x)\}$  (and  $f(x) \in f(X)$ , but this is irrelevant to our present discussion). But by Axiom 3.3, this implies that  $f(x) \neq f(x)$ , a contradiction. Therefore,  $f(x) \notin f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})$ .  $\square$

Now for the primary proof (of the first part of the question). We begin by proving that under the given conditions,  $f(X)$  is a finite set. First off, since  $X$  is finite by hypothesis, Definition 3.18 tells us that  $\#(X) = n$  for some natural number  $n$ . Thus, to prove that  $f(X)$  is finite (given that  $X$  is a finite set of some cardinality  $n$ ), we induct on  $n$ . For the base case  $n = 0$ , we have that  $X = \emptyset$  by Exercise 3.6.2. Thus, by Definition 3.11, we have that  $f(X) = \{f(x) : x \in \emptyset\}$ . But since  $y \notin \{f(x) : x \in \emptyset\}$  for all objects  $y$  ( $y \in \{f(x) : x \in \emptyset\} \implies y \in \emptyset$  by Axiom 3.5, contradicting Axiom 3.2), we have by the uniqueness of the empty set that  $\{f(x) : x \in \emptyset\} = \emptyset$ . Combining these two equations, we have  $f(X) = \emptyset$ . Therefore, by Exercise 3.6.2 again,  $f(X)$  is finite, proving the base case. Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for  $n$ ; we seek to verify it for  $n++$ . Let  $X$  be a finite set with  $\#(X) = n++$ . By Lemma 3.15,  $\#(X) \geq 1$ . Thus, by Lemma 3.13,  $X$  is non-empty, and if  $x$  is any element of  $X$ , then  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$ . It follows by



the induction hypothesis that  $f(X \setminus \{x\})$  is finite. Since  $f(X) \setminus f(\{x\}) \subseteq f(X \setminus \{x\})$  (Exercise 3.4.3), we have by Exercise 3.6.4c that  $f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})$  is finite. This combined with the facts that  $f(x) \notin f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})$  and  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x)\}$  (Lemma 3.23) means that  $(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) \cup f(\{x\})$  satisfies the stipulations of Exercise 3.6.4a, and thus that  $(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) \cup f(\{x\})$  is finite. Therefore, since  $(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) \cup f(\{x\}) = f(X)$  by Exercise 3.1.6g,  $f(X)$  is finite, closing the induction.

We now prove that  $\#(f(X)) \leq \#(X)$ . Once again, we induct on  $n$ , where  $\#(X) = n$ . For the base case  $n = 0$ , we know by the above that  $f(X) = \emptyset$ . Thus,  $\#(f(X)) = 0$  by Exercise 3.6.2, which implies by Exercise 2.2.3a that  $f(X) \leq 0$ . Since we also have  $0 = \#(X)$  by hypothesis, we have  $f(X) \leq \#(X)$  as desired. Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for  $n$ ; we seek to verify it for  $n++$ . As such, let  $X$  be a finite set with  $\#(X) = n++$ . In a similar manner to the above, we can show that if  $x$  is any element of  $X$ , then  $X \setminus \{x\}$  is finite and  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$ . With these facts out of the way, we can derive three inequalities which, when combined, will prove the desired result. Let's begin.

- (1) Since  $X \setminus \{x\}$  is finite,  $f(X \setminus \{x\})$  is finite by the first part of this proof. Thus, since Exercise 3.4.3 gives us  $f(X) \setminus f(\{x\}) \subseteq f(X \setminus \{x\})$ , we have by Exercise 3.6.4c that  $\#(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) \leq \#(f(X \setminus \{x\}))$ . On a related but slightly separate note, the facts that  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x)\}$  (Lemma 3.23),  $f(x) \in f(X)$  (Definition 3.11), and  $f(X)$  is finite with  $\#(f(X)) \geq 1$  ( $X$  finite by hypothesis implies  $f(X)$  finite;  $f(x) \in f(X)$  implies  $f(X)$  is nonempty, so  $\#(f(X)) \neq 0$ , so  $\#(f(X)) \geq 1$ ) collectively satisfy the stipulations of Lemma 3.13, and thus imply that  $\#(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) = \#(f(X)) - 1$ . Combining this result with the previous one demonstrates that  $\#(f(X)) - 1 = \#(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) \leq \#(f(X \setminus \{x\}))$ , i.e., that  $\#(f(X)) - 1 \leq \#(f(X \setminus \{x\}))$ . By Exercise 2.2.3d, we may add a quantity to both sides of the inequality and preserve the relation, so we can write  $\#(f(X)) - 1 + 1 \leq \#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1$ . By Lemma 3.18, this reduces to  $\#(f(X)) \leq \#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1$ .
- (2) Since  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$ , we have by induction hypothesis that  $\#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) \leq \#(X \setminus \{x\})$ . This implies, as above, that  $\#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1 \leq \#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1$ .
- (3) Since  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$  and  $\#(X) = n++$ , we have  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1 = n + 1 = n++ = \#(X)$ , i.e.,  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1 = \#(X)$ .

Therefore, if we string relations (1), (2), and (3) together, we have  $\#(f(X)) \leq \#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1 \leq \#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1 = \#(X)$ , i.e.,  $\#(f(X)) \leq \#(X)$ . This closes the induction.

We mirror the proof of the first part of the question to address the second part. As such, we induct on  $n$ , where  $\#(X) = n$ . For the base case  $n = 0$ , we know by the above that  $f(X) = \emptyset$ . Thus,  $\#(f(X)) = 0$  by Exercise 3.6.2. Since we also have  $0 = \#(X)$  by hypothesis, transitivity implies that  $f(X) = \#(X)$ , as desired. Now suppose inductively that we have proven the claim for  $n$ ; we seek to verify it for  $n++$ . As such, let  $X$  be a finite set with  $\#(X) = n++$ . In a similar manner to the above, we can show that if  $x$  is any element of  $X$ , then  $X \setminus \{x\}$  is finite and  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$ . With these facts out of the way, we can derive three equations which, when combined, will prove the desired result. Let's begin.

- (1) Since  $X \setminus \{x\}$  is finite,  $f(X \setminus \{x\})$  is finite by the first part of this proof. Thus, since Exercise 3.4.3 gives us  $f(X) \setminus f(\{x\}) = f(X \setminus \{x\})$  when  $f$  is one-to-one, we have that  $\#(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) = \#(f(X \setminus \{x\}))$ . On a related but slightly separate note, the facts that  $f(\{x\}) = \{f(x)\}$  (Lemma 3.23),  $f(x) \in f(X)$  (Definition 3.11), and  $f(X)$  is finite with  $\#(f(X)) \geq 1$  ( $X$  finite by hypothesis implies  $f(X)$  finite;  $f(x) \in f(X)$  implies  $f(X)$  is nonempty, so  $\#(f(X)) \neq 0$ , so  $\#(f(X)) \geq 1$ ) collectively satisfy the stipulations of Lemma 3.13, and thus imply that  $\#(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) = \#(f(X)) - 1$ . Combining this result with the previous one demonstrates that  $\#(f(X)) - 1 = \#(f(X) \setminus f(\{x\})) = \#(f(X \setminus \{x\}))$ , i.e., that  $\#(f(X)) - 1 = \#(f(X \setminus \{x\}))$ . Thus, we can write  $\#(f(X)) - 1 + 1 = \#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1$ , which reduces by Lemma 3.18 to  $\#(f(X)) = \#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1$ .
- (2) Since  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$ , we have by induction hypothesis that  $\#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) = \#(X \setminus \{x\})$ . This implies, as above, that  $\#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1 = \#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1$ .

- (3) Since  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) = n$  and  $\#(X) = n++$ , we have  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1 = n + 1 = n++ = \#(X)$ , i.e.,  $\#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1 = \#(X)$ .

Therefore, if we string equations (1), (2), and (3) together, we have  $\#(f(X)) = \#(f(X \setminus \{x\})) + 1 = \#(X \setminus \{x\}) + 1 = \#(X)$ , i.e.,  $\#(f(X)) = \#(X)$ . This closes the induction.  $\square$

## Appendix A

# Appendix: The Basics of Mathematical Logic

- 6/19:
- **Mathematical logic:** The language one uses to conduct rigorous mathematical proofs.
  - “A logical argument may sometimes look unwieldy, excessively complicated, or otherwise appear unconvincing. The big advantage of writing logically, however, is that one can be absolutely sure that your conclusion will be correct” (Tao, 2016, p. 305).
  - “Being logical is not the only desirable trait in writing, and in fact sometimes it gets in the way; mathematicians for instance often resort to short informal arguments which are not logically rigorous when they want to convince other mathematicians of a statement without going through all of the long details” (Tao, 2016, p. 305).
  - “Because logic is innate, the laws of logic that you learn should make sense — if you find yourself having to memorize one of the principles or laws of logic here, without feeling a mental ‘click’ or comprehending why that law should work, then you will probably not be able to use that law of logic correctly and effectively in practice. So, please don’t study this appendix the way you might cram before a final — that is going to be useless. Instead, put away your highlighter pen, and read and understand this appendix rather than merely studying it” (Tao, 2016, p. 306).

### A.1 Mathematical Statements

- **Mathematical statement:** A precise statement “concerning various mathematical objects (numbers, vectors, functions, etc.) and relations between them (addition, equality, differentiation, etc.)” (Tao, 2016, p. 306).
  - Mathematical statements are either true or false.
  - For example,  $2 + 2 = 4$  is true while  $2 + 2 = 5$  is false.
- **Ill-formed (statement):** A statement that is neither true nor false (or perhaps not even a statement). *Also known as ill-defined.*
  - For example,  $0/0 = 1$ .
  - The antonym is **well-formed** or **well-defined** statements.
- A logical argument should include only well-formed statements.
- “It is important, especially when just learning a subject, to take care in keeping statements well-formed and precise. Once you have more skill and confidence, of course you can afford once again to speak

loosely<sup>[1]</sup>, because you will know what you are doing and won't be in as much danger of veering off into nonsense" (Tao, 2016, p. 307).

- The principle of **proof by contradiction** is "to prove that a statement is true, it suffices to show that it is not false, while to show that a statement is false, it suffices to show that it is not true" (Tao, 2016, p. 307).
- The axioms of logic become more dubious in very non-mathematical situations. One can attempt to apply logic via a mathematical model, but that's science or philosophy. There are other models of logic that attempt to account for these scenarios, but they're beyond the scope of this text.
- Note that statements may be true but not useful ( $2 = 2$ ) or efficient ( $4 \leq 4 - 4 = 4$  would be better), and they may be false but still be useful ( $\pi = 22/7$ ). However, we concern ourselves at present with truth, alone, not usefulness or efficiency as those are to some extent matters of opinion.
- **Expression:** "A sequence of mathematical symbols which produces some mathematical object (a number, matrix, function, set, etc.) as its value" (Tao, 2016, pp. 308–09).
  - For example,  $2 + 3 * 5$  is an expression while  $2 + 3 * 5 = 17$  is a statement.
  - An expression is neither true nor false, but it can be well- or ill-defined.
- **Relation:** A thing that makes statements out of expressions, such as  $=$ ,  $<$ ,  $\geq$ ,  $\in$ ,  $\subset$ , etc.
- **Property:** A thing that makes statements out of expressions, such as "is prime," "is continuous," "is invertible," etc<sup>[2]</sup>.
- **Logical connective:** A thing that relates multiple mathematical statements, such as and, or, not, if-then, if-and-only-if, etc.
- **Compound statement:** Two or more mathematical statements joined by logical connectives.
- **Conjunction:** "If  $X$  is a statement and  $Y$  is a statement, the statement ' $X$  and  $Y$ ' is true if  $X$  and  $Y$  are both true, and is false otherwise" (Tao, 2016, p. 309).
  - Logician's notation: " $X \wedge Y$ " or " $X \& Y$ ."
  - Note that " $X$  and  $Y$ " can be reworded " $X$  and also  $Y$ ," or "Both  $X$  and  $Y$  are true," or even " $X$ , but  $Y$ ," or a multitude of other ways and convey the same statement logically, if not expressively.
- **Disjunction:** "If  $X$  is a statement and  $Y$  is a statement, the statement ' $X$  or  $Y$ ' is true if either  $X$  or  $Y$  is true, or both" (Tao, 2016, p. 309).
  - This is called **inclusive or**. There is a such thing as **exclusive or**, but it shows up far less regularly.
  - An exclusive or may be, "Either  $X$  or  $Y$  is true, but not both," or "Exactly one of  $X$  or  $Y$  is true."
  - To verify a disjunction, it suffices to verify just one case — this comes in handy when it is significantly easier to verify one case over the other.
- **Negation:** "The statement ' $X$  is false'... is true if and only if  $X$  is false, and is false if and only if  $X$  is true" (Tao, 2016, p. 310).
  - Logician's notation: " $\sim X$ ," " $!X$ ," or " $\neg X$ ."
  - Negations convert "and" into "or": The negation of "Jane has black hair and Jane has blue eyes" is "Jane doesn't have black hair or Jane doesn't have blue eyes." Similarly, the negation of " $x \geq 2$  and  $x \leq 6$ " is " $x < 2$  or  $x > 6$ ."

<sup>1</sup>This is very similar to the English class/media arts idea of "you have to know the rules to be able to break them."

<sup>2</sup>With the introduction of properties, it is worth officially noting that mathematical statements can contain English words.

- Negations convert “or” into “and”: The negation of “John has black hair or brown hair” is “John does not have black hair and does not have brown hair” or, equivalently, “John has neither black nor brown hair.” Similarly, the negation of “ $x < -1$  or  $x > 1$ ” is “ $x \geq -1$  and  $x \leq 1$ .”
- Negations can produce clearly false statements: the negation of “ $x$  is even or odd” is “ $x$  is neither even nor odd.”
- Negations can get unwieldy — be careful!
- Note that “ $X$  is true” can be abbreviated to simply “ $X$ .”
- **If and only if:** “If  $X$  is a statement, and  $Y$  is a statement, we say that “ $X$  is true if and only if  $Y$  is true,” [if] whenever  $X$  is true,  $Y$  has to be also, and whenever  $Y$  is true,  $X$  has to be also (i.e.,  $X$  and  $Y$  are ‘equally true’)” (Tao, 2016, p. 311). *Also known as iff.*
  - Logician’s notation: “ $X \leftrightarrow Y$ .”
  - Denotes “logically equivalent statements.”
  - For example, “ $x = 3$  if and only if  $2x = 6$ ” is true.
  - False statements can be logically equivalent: “ $2 + 2 = 5$  if and only if  $4 + 4 = 10$ .”
  - Sometimes, it is of interest to show that more than two statements are logically equivalent (See Exercise A.1.5 and A.1.6).

## Exercises

- 6/22: 1. What is the negation of the statement, “either  $X$  is true, or  $Y$  is true, but not both?”
- Proof.*  $X$  and  $Y$  or neither  $X$  nor  $Y$ . □
2. What is the negation of the statement, “ $X$  is true if and only if  $Y$  is true?” There may be multiple ways to phrase this negation.
- Proof.*  $X$  is true if and only if  $Y$  is false. □
3. Suppose that you have shown that whenever  $X$  is true, then  $Y$  is true, and whenever  $X$  is false, then  $Y$  is false. Have you now demonstrated that  $X$  and  $Y$  are logically equivalent? Explain.
- Proof.* Yes — although we have only described the dependence of  $Y$  on  $X$ , the dependence of  $X$  on  $Y$  is implied (suppose  $X$  is false when  $Y$  is true — but since  $X$  is false,  $Y$  is false, a contradiction; the same holds the other way around). □
4. Suppose that you have shown that whenever  $X$  is true, then  $Y$  is true, and whenever  $Y$  is false, then  $X$  is false. Have you now demonstrated that  $X$  is true if and only if  $Y$  is true? Explain.
- Proof.* No —  $X$  could be false and  $Y$  could still be true without leading to any contradictions. □
5. Suppose you know that  $X$  is true if and only if  $Y$  is true, and you know that  $Y$  is true if and only if  $Z$  is true. Is this enough to show that  $X, Y, Z$  are all logically equivalent? Explain.
- Proof.* Yes — by the supposition,  $X \leftrightarrow Y$  and  $Y \leftrightarrow Z$ . Since  $X$  true implies  $Y$  true implies  $Z$  true,  $X$  false implies  $Y$  false implies  $Z$  false,  $Z$  true implies  $Y$  true implies  $X$  true, and  $Z$  false implies  $Y$  false implies  $X$  false,  $X \leftrightarrow Z$ . Thus,  $X, Y, Z$  are logically equivalent. □
6. Suppose you know that whenever  $X$  is true, then  $Y$  is true; that whenever  $Y$  is true, then  $Z$  is true; and whenever  $Z$  is true, then  $X$  is true. Is this enough to show that  $X, Y, Z$  are all logically equivalent? Explain.
- Proof.* Yes — clearly  $X, Y, Z$  are equally true. If they were not equally false (say if only one or two were false), then we would have a contradiction, as one true implies all the others are true. Thus, they are equally false, too. Therefore, they are logically equivalent. □

## A.2 Implication

- 6/24:
- **Implication:** “If  $X$  is a statement, and  $Y$  is a statement, then ‘if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ’ is the implication from  $X$  to  $Y$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 312).
    - Logician’s notation: “ $X \implies Y$ .”
    - Can be reworded “when  $X$  is true,  $Y$  is true,” “ $X$  implies  $Y$ ,” “ $Y$  is true when  $X$  is,” or “ $X$  is true only if  $Y$  is true.”
    - “What this statement ‘if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ’ means depends on whether  $X$  is true or false. If  $X$  is true, then ‘if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ’ is true when  $Y$  is true, and false when  $Y$  is false. If however  $X$  is false, then ‘if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ’ is *always* true, regardless of whether  $Y$  is true or false!” (Tao, 2016, p. 312).
    - “When  $X$  is true, the statement ‘if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ’ implies that  $Y$  is true. But when  $X$  is false, the statement ‘if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ’ offers no information about whether  $Y$  is true or not; the statement is true, but **vacuous**” (Tao, 2016, p. 312).
  - **Vacuous** (statement): A statement that “does not convey any new information” (Tao, 2016, p. 312).
    - Vacuous statements can still be helpful in proofs, though.
  - The only way to disprove an implication (to show that it’s false) is to show that the hypothesis (first statement) is true *and* the conclusion (second statement) is false.
  - Whereas “if and only if” asserts that  $X$  and  $Y$  are equally true, an implication only asserts that  $Y$  is at least as true as  $X$ .
  - Vacuously true implications are often used in a situation where the conclusion and hypothesis are both false, but the implication is true regardless, e.g., “if John had left work at 5pm, then he would be here by now.”
  - They can also be used to facilitate a proof by contradiction: We know that “if John had left work at 5pm, then he would be here by now” and that “John is not here now.” Suppose that John left work at 5pm. Then he would be here by now, a contradiction. Thus, John did not leave work at 5pm.
  - Implications can be true even when there is no causal link between the hypothesis and conclusion<sup>[3]</sup>, e.g., if  $1 + 1 = 2$ , then Washington, D.C. is the capital of the United States is true.
    - Using such acausal implications in a logical argument is typically frowned upon, since it will likely cause unneeded confusion.
  - To prove, “if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ,” assume  $X$  is true and then deduce  $Y$  from  $X$  and other known hypotheses.
    - It does not matter whether or not  $X$  is true; an implication can be proved true irrespective of whether or not  $X$  is true.
    - It would be incorrect, though, to assume  $Y$  and deduce  $X$ . One cannot assume the conclusion and deduce the hypothesis.
  - With regard to vacuously true statements, one need not be concerned that some hypotheses in their argument might not be correct, as long as their argument is still structured to give the correct conclusion regardless of whether those hypotheses were true or false (proving  $n(n + 1)$  is even when  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ).
  - **Converse** (of “if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ”): The statement “if  $Y$ , then  $X$ .”
    - “ $X$  if and only if  $Y$ ” implies that “if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ” *and* its converse are true.
  - **Inverse** (of “if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ”): The statement “if  $X$  is false, then  $Y$  is false.”

---

<sup>3</sup>This is really weird — I’ll need to return to this later.

- The inverse of a true implication is not necessarily a true implication.
- If  $X \leftrightarrow Y$ , then the inverse of “if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ” holds (namely, we know that “if  $X$  is false, then  $Y$  is false”).
- **Contrapositive** (of “if  $X$ , then  $Y$ ”): The statement “if  $Y$  is false, then  $X$  is false.”
  - The contrapositive and the original statement are equally true.
- **Proof by contradiction**: “To show that something must be false, assume first that it is true, and show that this implies something which you know to be false (e.g., that a statement is simultaneously true and not true)” (Tao, 2016, p. 316). *Also known as* **reductio ad absurdum**.
  - Particularly (but not exclusively) useful for proving “negative” statements, e.g.,  $X$  is false,  $a \neq b$ , etc.
- On logician’s notation: general-purpose mathematicians do not often use them because English words are often more readable and don’t take up that much more space. That being said,  $\implies$  is a possible exception.

### A.3 The Structure of Proofs

- 6/25:
- **Direct approach**: Assume the hypothesis and work one’s way toward a conclusion.
  - For example, to prove “ $A$  implies  $B$ ,” show  $A$  implies  $C$ , implies  $D$ , implies  $B$ . Done.
  - We can also work backwards: “To show  $B$ , it would suffice to show  $D$ . Since  $C$  implies  $D$ , we just need to show  $C$ . But  $C$  follows from  $A$ ” (Tao, 2016, p. 318).
    - Note that this *is* different from starting with the conclusion and proving the hypothesis.
  - One can also move forward and backward at will.
    - “Thus there are many ways to write the same proof down; how you do so is up to you, but certain ways of writing proofs are more readable and natural than others, and different arrangements tend to emphasize different parts of the argument” (Tao, 2016, p. 319).
  - Multiple hypotheses and conclusions can split the proof into cases, making it more complicated.
  - “There are several things to try when attempting a proof. With experience, it will become clearer which approaches are likely to work easily, which ones will probably work but require much effort, and which ones are probably going to fail” (Tao, 2016, p. 319).
  - “There may definitely be multiple ways to approach a problem, so if you see more than one way to begin a problem, you can just try whichever one looks the easiest, but be prepared to switch to another approach if it begins to look hopeless” (Tao, 2016, p. 320).

### A.4 Variables and Quantifiers

- **Propositional logic**: “Starting with primitive statements (such as ‘ $2 + 2 = 4$ ’ or ‘John has black hair’), then forming compound statements using logical connectives, and then using various laws of logic to pass from one’s hypotheses to one’s conclusions” (Tao, 2016, p. 320). *Also known as* **Boolean logic**.
  - There are a dozen or so laws of propositional logic, but Tao, 2016 excludes them because memorizing such a list is not how one should learn how to do logic. I will, however, include the list (from “The Laws of Propositional Logic”, 2018) for reference.

- Let  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  be statements. Let  $t$  be a formula that is a tautology and let  $f$  be a formula that is a contradiction. Then:
  1. **Law of Double Negation:**  $\neg\neg P \equiv P$ .
  2. **Associative Law for Conjunction:**  $P \wedge (Q \wedge R) \equiv (P \wedge Q) \wedge R$ .
  3. **Associative Law for Disjunction:**  $P \vee (Q \vee R) \equiv (P \vee Q) \vee R$ .
  4. **Commutative Law for Conjunction:**  $P \wedge Q \equiv Q \wedge P$ .
  5. **Commutative Law for Disjunction:**  $P \vee Q \equiv Q \vee P$ .
  6. **First Distributive Law:**  $P \vee (Q \wedge R) \equiv (P \vee Q) \wedge (P \vee R)$ .
  7. **Second Distributive Law:**  $P \wedge (Q \vee R) \equiv (P \wedge Q) \vee (P \wedge R)$ .
  8. **Idempotent Law for Conjunction:**  $P \wedge P \equiv P$ .
  9. **Idempotent Law for Disjunction:**  $P \vee P \equiv P$ .
  10. **Identity Law for Tautologies:**  $P \wedge t \equiv P$ .
  11. **Identity Law for Contradictions:**  $P \vee f \equiv P$ .
  12. **Inverse Law for Tautologies:**  $P \vee \neg P \equiv t$ .
  13. **Inverse Law for Contradictions:**  $P \wedge \neg P \equiv f$ .
  14. **Domination Law for Tautologies:**  $P \vee t \equiv t$ .
  15. **Domination Law for Contradictions:**  $P \wedge f \equiv f$ .
  16. **De Morgan's Law 1:**  $\neg(P \vee Q) \equiv \neg P \wedge \neg Q$ .
  17. **De Morgan's Law 2:**  $\neg(P \wedge Q) \equiv \neg P \vee \neg Q$ .
- Propositional logic is insufficient to do all math, though, because it does not incorporate **variables**.
- **Mathematical logic:** Propositional logic plus **variables**.
- **Variable:** “A symbol, such as  $n$  or  $x$ , which denotes a certain type of mathematical object — an integer, a vector, a matrix, that kind of thing” (Tao, 2016, p. 320). They denote “quantities which are unknown, or set to some value, or assumed to obey some property” (Tao, 2016, p. 320).
  - In almost all circumstances, the type of object that the variable represents should be declared; variables should have an explicit type.
  - $x = x$  is true regardless of the type, but  $x + y = y + x$  is only true if  $x$  and  $y$  are variables for which addition makes sense and are commutative.
- “The truth of a statement involving a variable may depend on the **context** of the statement” (Tao, 2016, p. 321).
- **Free variable:** A variable with a specified type but an unspecified value.
  - “Statements with free variables might not have a definite truth value” (Tao, 2016, p. 321).
  - $x + 3 = 5$  does not have a definite truth value if  $x$  is a free variable.
  - $(x + 1)^2 = x^2 + 2x + 1$  does have a definite truth value even with  $x$  as a free variable.
- **Set** (a free variable): Define a value to a free variable via a statement such as “Let  $x = 2$ ” or “Set  $x$  equal to 2.”
- **Bound variable:** A variable with a specified type that has been set to some value.
  - “Statements involving only bound variables and no free variables do have a definite truth value” (Tao, 2016, p. 321).
- A free variable can be bounded without being set to a *specific* value, per se, with the use of “for all” or “for some.”



- “ $(x + 1)^2 = x^2 + 2x + 1$ ” is indefinite; “ $(x + 1)^2 = x^2 + 2x + 1$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ” is definite.
- “ $x + 3 = 5$ ” is indefinite; “ $x + 3 = 5$  for some  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ ” is definite.
- **Universal quantifiers:** A quantifier of the form “for all  $x$  of type  $T$ .”
  - Logician’s notation: “ $\forall$ .”
  - “ $P(x)$  is true for all  $x$  of type  $T$ ” is equivalent to the implication, “if  $x$  is of type  $T$ , then  $P(x)$  is true.”
  - Prove such a statement by letting  $x$  be any element of type  $T$  and showing that  $P(x)$  holds.
  - Disprove it with just a single counterexample (an element  $x \in T$  for which  $P(x)$  is false).
  - If there are no variables  $x$  of type  $T$ , then “ $P(x)$  is true for all  $x$  of type  $T$ ” is **vacuously true**.
- **Existential quantifiers:** A quantifier of the form “for some  $x$  of type  $T$ .”
  - Logician’s notation: “ $\exists$ .”
  - There exists at least one (but possibly numerous)  $x$  of type  $T$  for which  $P(x)$  is true.
    - To indicate uniqueness, use “for exactly one  $x \dots$ ” instead of “for some  $x \dots$ ”
  - Prove such a statement by providing a single example of such an  $x$ .
  - A vacuously true “for all” statement will be false as a “for some” statement.
    - “ $6 < 2x < 4$  for all  $3 < x < 2$  is true, but  $6 < 2x < 4$  for some  $3 < x < 2$  is false” (Tao, 2016, p. 324).

## A.5 Nested Quantifiers

- 6/28: • Two or more quantifiers can be combined to produce a type of compound statement.
- Negating a universal statement produces an existential statement, and vice versa, as alluded to above.
- 6/29: • **Aristotlean logic:** “Deals with objects, their properties, and quantifiers such as ‘for all’ and ‘for some’” (Tao, 2016, p. 326).
- A subset of mathematical logic since it lacks the concepts of logical connectives and binary relations (e.g.,  $=$  or  $<$ ).
- **Syllogism:** A typical line of reasoning in Aristotlean logic consisting of a major and minor premise, and a conclusion.
- Swapping the order of quantifiers may or may not make a difference.
- “For all real numbers  $a$ , and for all real numbers  $b$ , we have  $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ ” is logically equivalent to “for all real numbers  $b$ , and for all real numbers  $a$ , we have  $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ .”
  - “For every integer  $n$ , there exists an integer  $m$  which is larger than  $n$ ” is not logically equivalent to “There exists an integer  $m$  which is larger than  $n$  for every integer  $n$ .”
  - “The reason why the order of quantifiers is important is that the inner variables may possibly depend on the outer variables, but not vice versa” (Tao, 2016, p. 327).

## Exercises

- 7/2: 1. What does each of the following statements mean, and which of them are true? Can you find gaming metaphors for each of these statements?
- (a) For every positive number  $x$ , and every positive number  $y$ , we have  $y^2 = x$ .

*Proof.* It means that for all positive numbers  $x$ , the statement “ $y^2 = x$  for all positive number  $y$ ” is true. However, this is a false statement ( $2^3 \neq 3$ , for example). As a gaming metaphor, suppose you play a game where your opponent picks two positive numbers  $x$  and  $y$ . If  $y^2 = x$ , then you win. If you can always win, then the statement is true.  $\square$

- (b) There exists a positive number  $x$  such that for every positive number  $y$ , we have  $y^2 = x$ .

*Proof.* It means that for some positive number  $x$ , the statement “ $y^2 = x$  for all positive numbers  $y$ ” is true. However, this is a false statement (no positive number exists such that every positive number squared equals it). As a gaming metaphor, suppose you play a game where you first pick a positive number  $x$ , and then your opponent picks a positive number  $y$ . If you can pick an  $x$  such that any  $y$  picked by your opponent satisfies  $y^2 = x$ , then you win. If you can win once, then the statement is true.  $\square$

- (c) There exists a positive number  $x$ , and there exists a positive number  $y$ , such that  $y^2 = x$ .

*Proof.* It means that the statement “ $y^2 = x$ ” is true for some pair of positive numbers  $x, y$ . This statement is true. As a gaming metaphor, suppose you play a game where you pick two positive numbers  $x$  and  $y$ . If  $y^2 = x$ , then you win. If you can win once, then the statement is true.  $\square$

- (d) For every positive number  $y$ , there exists a positive number  $x$  such that  $y^2 = x$ .

*Proof.* It means that for all positive numbers  $y$ , the statement “ $y^2 = x$  for some positive number  $x$ ” is true. This statement is true. As a gaming metaphor, suppose you play a game where your opponent first picks a positive number  $y$ , and then you pick a positive number  $x$ . If  $y^2 = x$ , then you win. If you can always win, then the statement is true.  $\square$

- (e) There exists a positive number  $y$  such that for every positive number  $x$ , we have  $y^2 = x$ .

*Proof.* It means that for some positive number  $y$ , the statement “ $y^2 = x$  for all positive numbers  $x$ ” is true. However, this is a false statement (no positive number exists such that the square root of every positive number equals it). As a gaming metaphor, suppose you play a game where you first pick a positive number  $y$ , and then your opponent picks a positive number  $x$ . If you can pick a  $y$  such that any  $x$  picked by your opponent satisfies  $y^2 = x$ , then you win. If you can win once, then the statement is true.  $\square$

## A.6 Some Examples of Proofs and Quantifiers

- This section proves some simple results involving the “for all” and the “for some” quantifiers to demonstrate how the quantifiers are arranged and how the proofs are structured. Let’s begin.

- **Proposition A.1.** *For every  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that  $2\delta < \varepsilon$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\varepsilon > 0$  be arbitrary. We have to show that there exists a  $\delta > 0$  such that  $2\delta < \varepsilon$ . We only need to pick one such  $\delta$ ; choosing  $\delta := \frac{\varepsilon}{3}$  will work, since one then has  $2\delta = \frac{2}{3}\varepsilon < \varepsilon$ .  $\square$

- Since we are proving something for *every*  $\varepsilon$ , we must make  $\varepsilon$  arbitrary.
- On the other hand,  $\delta$  can be chosen as we wish, because we only need to show that there exists *some*  $\delta$  which does what we want.
- The  $\delta$  can depend on  $\varepsilon$  because “the  $\delta$ -quantifier is nested inside the  $\varepsilon$ -quantifier” (Tao, 2016, p. 328).

- **Proposition A.2.** *There exists an  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that  $\sin x > \frac{x}{2}$  for all  $0 < x < \varepsilon$ .*

*Proof.* We pick  $\varepsilon > 0$  to be chosen later, and let  $0 < x < \varepsilon$ . Since the derivative of  $\sin x$  is  $\cos x$ , we see from the mean-value theorem we have

$$\frac{\sin x}{x} = \frac{\sin x - \sin 0}{x - 0} = \cos y$$

for some  $0 \leq y \leq x$ . Thus, in order to ensure that  $\sin x > \frac{x}{2}$ , it would suffice to ensure that  $\cos y > \frac{1}{2}$ . To do this, it would suffice to ensure that  $0 \leq y < \frac{\pi}{3}$  (since the cosine function takes the value of 1 at 0, takes the value of  $\frac{1}{2}$  at  $\frac{\pi}{3}$ , and is decreasing in between). Since  $0 \leq y \leq x$  and  $0 < x < \varepsilon$ , we see that  $0 \leq y < \varepsilon$ . Thus if we pick  $\varepsilon := \frac{\pi}{3}$ , then we have  $0 \leq y < \frac{\pi}{3}$  as desired, and so we can ensure that  $\sin x > \frac{x}{2}$  for all  $0 < x < \varepsilon$ .  $\square$

- Normally, when proving a “there exists ( $\varepsilon$ ) such that  $X$  is true” statement, one proceeds by selecting  $\varepsilon$  carefully, and then showing that  $X$  is true for that  $\varepsilon$ . However, when the selection would require a lot of foresight, we defer it until later in the argument, as above.
- Note that since the value of  $\varepsilon$  didn’t depend on the nested variables  $x$  and  $y$ , the proof is legitimate.

## A.7 Equality

- **Equality:** The most important relation. It links two objects  $x, y$  of the same type  $T$ . “Given two such objects  $x$  and  $y$ , the statement  $x = y$  may or may not be true; it depends on the value of  $x$  and  $y$  and also on how equality is defined for the class of objects under consideration” (Tao, 2016, p. 329).
  - For example,  $12 \neq 2$  in ordinary arithmetic, but  $12 = 2$  in modular arithmetic with modulus 10.
- For the purposes of logic, equality obeys the following four **axioms of equality**.
- **Reflexive axiom:** Given any object  $x$ , we have  $x = x$ .
- **Symmetry axiom:** Given any two objects  $x$  and  $y$  of the same type, if  $x = y$ , then  $y = x$ .
- **Transitive axiom:** Given any three objects  $x, y, z$  of the same type, if  $x = y$  and  $y = z$ , then  $x = z$ .
- **Substitution axiom:** Given any two objects  $x$  and  $y$  of the same type, if  $x = y$ , then  $f(x) = f(y)$  for all functions or operations  $f$ . Similarly, for any property  $P(x)$  depending on  $x$ , if  $x = y$ , then  $P(x)$  and  $P(y)$  are equivalent statements.
  - The first three axioms assert that equality is an **equivalence relation**.
- “Thus, from the point of view of logic, we can define equality on a class of objects however we please, so long as it obeys the reflexive, symmetry, and transitive axioms, and is consistent with all other operations on the class of objects under discussion in the sense that the substitution axiom was true for all of those operations” (Tao, 2016, p. 330).

## Exercises

1. Suppose you have four real numbers  $a, b, c, d$  and you know that  $a = b$  and  $c = d$ . Use the above four axioms to deduce that  $a + d = b + c$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f(x) = x + c$ . By the substitution axiom, since  $a = b$ ,  $f(a) = f(b) \implies a + c = b + c$ . Let  $g(x) = a + x$ . By the substitution axiom, since  $c = d$ ,  $f(c) = f(d) \implies a + c = a + d$ . By the symmetry axiom,  $a + d = a + c$ . By the transitive axiom,  $a + d = a + c = b + c$ .  $\square$

## A.8 Misc. Notes

- “From a logical point of view, there is no difference between a lemma, proposition, theorem, or corollary — they are all claims waiting to be proved. However, we use these terms to suggest different levels of importance and difficulty. A lemma is an easily proved claim which is helpful for proving other propositions and theorems, but is usually not particularly interesting in its own right. A proposition is a statement which is interesting in its own right, while a theorem is a more important statement than a proposition which says something definitive on the subject, and often takes more effort to prove than a proposition or lemma. A corollary is a quick consequence of a proposition or theorem that was proven recently.” (Tao, 2016, p. 25).

# References

- Jiang, Y. (2020). Solutions to Tao's Analysis I: Chapter 3.1. <https://yehongjiang.com/math/solutions-to-taos-analysis-i-chapter-3-1/>. Accessed 22 July 2020.
- Ojo, S. (2019). Proof of Strong principle of Induction (T. Tao Analysis I). Mathematics Stack Exchange. URL: <https://math.stackexchange.com/q/3143086> (version: 2019-08-29).
- Tao, T. (2016). *Analysis I* (Third). Texts and Readings in Mathematics. P-19 Green Park Extension, New Delhi 110016, India: Hindustan Book Agency.
- Tao, T. (2020). Analysis I errata. <https://terrytao.wordpress.com/books/analysis-i/>. Accessed 23 July 2020.
- The Laws of Propositional Logic. (2018). <http://mathonline.wikidot.com/the-laws-of-propositional-logic>. Accessed 25 June 2020.